UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OU_220061

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

)SMANIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Call No. 821/T49M Accession No.

Author Ranken-R

Title Morte Arthur

This book should be returned on or before the date last marked below.

Morte Arthure

Morte Arthure.

An alliterative Poem of the 14th Century

From

The Lincoln MS.

Written by

Robert of Thornton

Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary, By

Mary Macleod Banks

Longmans, Green, and Co.,
39 paternoster Row, London
New York and Bombay
1900

PART I
THE TEXT

MORTE ARTHURE.

EEKATA.

MISPRINTS: TEXT.

line 527 *the* for b*e*
623 castelles/or castells
656 euere „ euere
694 pat „ pat
996 out „ owt
1052 *tham* „ *p*am
1085 p*e* „ pe
1097 Lyme „ Lym
1485 semi-colon missing at the end of the line
1687 comma missing at the end of the line
1845 soucrayfige *for* soue-raygne
2166 kyngo *for* kynge
2239 burlyched,, burlyche
1. 2261 *conquerourfor* conquer-*our*
2282 what *for* whate
2808 them „ bem
2857 blode „ bolde
3100 stablis *for* stablede
3208 note[3];r,rde for yr,gyrde
3259 comely *for* comly
3297 fro „ for
3359 as „ es
3371 frelich „ freliche
3390 sondire „ sondire
3753 their *for* theire
3760 comma missing at the end of the line
4034 note of exclamation ditto
4040 thareto *for p*areto

NOTES.

line 156 Keus qui mont *for* Keus qui mout
1. 3942 Pre *for p*re

GLOSSARY.

Allblausters/or allblawsters
(Baneoure) 3782 *for* 3732
Certyfye ; a. *for* v. (verb)
Chawnes *for* chawnse
Cleveworte *for* clereworte
Creete „ creette
Deffure „ deffuse
Dertflyche „ derflyche
Dowtle „ dowtte
(Dryssede) Drerce *for* dresce
(Ekken) ekys should be in small capitals
Faytnerly/or faythely
Frekkely „ frekkly
(Frythes) *v.s. pl.* for *v.* 3 *pl.*
(Gledys)177 for 117
(Graynes) 3163 *for* 3463
(Graythe) 1303 „ 4303
Grewes *for* greues
Gwerddowns „ gwerdouns
(Halely) 1101 „ 1001
Hondem „ honden
Housynge „ howsynge
Lattede „ layttede
(Rype) 1867 „ 1877
(Salue) deal „ heal
(Sawturoure, saltier) ordinarily *for* ordinary
Schirrewes for schirreues
(Schone) 3559 *for* 3599
(Semble) 1547 „ 1457
Senegly „ sengely
(Tak) tare „ tase
(Tite) alle „ alls
(Wiste) welte „ wiet

INDEX OF NAMES.

Fawnell *for* Fawuell.

CORRECTIONS.

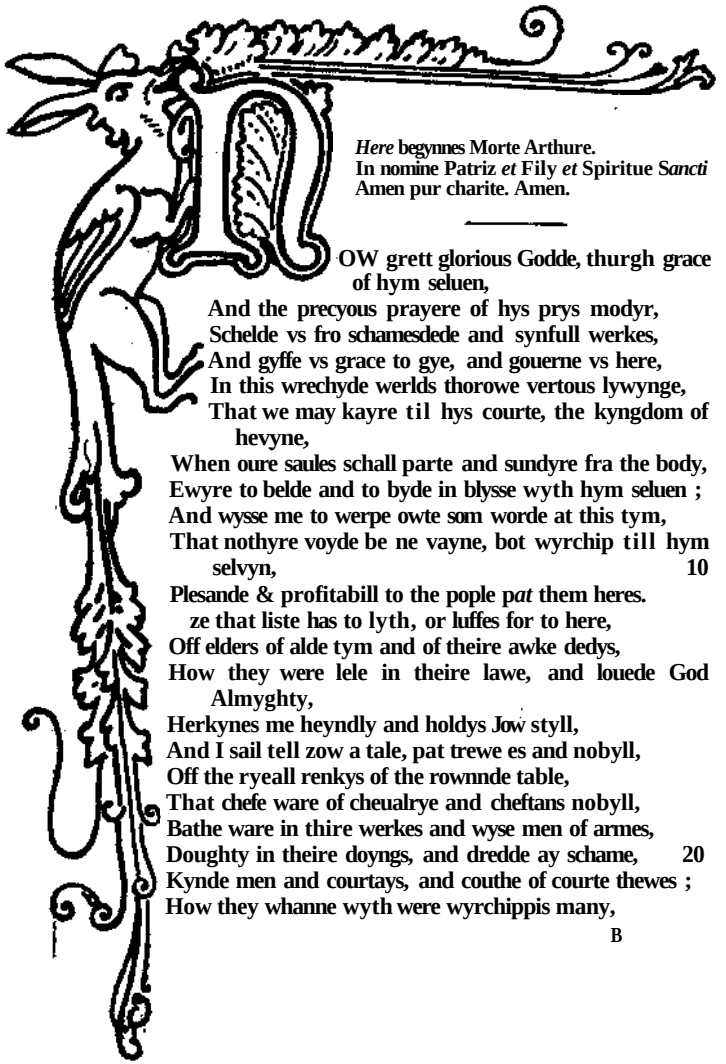
1. 1051, ' Cowlefull' should be cowle full

1. 3126, 'stabbis' wants a note, MS. stablis

1. 8996, ' kyhte' wants a note to say that the MS. has ' kyghte ' with the g twice stroked out.

In the Glossary, 'mailes' should be males. ' Ercheuesques' wants the line-number, 67. To 'o, oo,'add of, from. ' Offyre' wants the line-number, 939. To 'Singulere' add *adv.* 172. To ' Toppe-castells' add line-number, 3616. To 'Ventelde' add the line-number, 737. 'Roo,' 3272 should be 4304. ' Brayell,' s. stomach, 793, is omitted. N.B. (Alfyn) elephant = alfyn, is not meant to suggest that alfyn is derived from elephant; the form of statement is misleading.

Morte Arthure



Here begynnes Morte Arthure.
In nomine Patriz *et* Fily *et* Spiritue S*ancti*
Amen pur charite. Amen.

NOW grett glorious Godde, thurgh grace of hym seluen,
And the precyous prayere of hys prys modyr,
Schelde vs fro schamesdede and synfull werkes,
And gyffe vs grace to gye, and gouerne vs here,
In this wrechyde werlds thorowe vertous lywynge,
That we may kayre til hys courte, the kyngdom of hevyne,
When oure saules schall parte and sundyre fra the body,
Ewyre to belde and to byde in blysse wyth hym seluen ;
And wysse me to werpe owte som worde at this tym,
That nothyre voyde be ne vayne, bot wyrchip till hym selvyn,
Plesande & profitabill to the pople p*at* them heres.
ze that liste has to lyth, or luffes for to here,
Off elders of alde tym and of theire awke dedys,
How they were lele in theire lawe, and louede God Almyghty,
Herkynes me heyndly and holdys Jow styll,
And I sail tell zow a tale, pat trewe es and nobyll,
Off the ryeall renkys of the rownnde table,
That chefe ware of cheualrye and cheftans nobyll,
Bathe ware in thire werkes and wyse men of armes,
Doughty in theire doyngs, and dredde ay schame,
Kynde men and courtays, and couthe of courte thewes ;
How they whanne wyth were wyrchippis many,

Sloughe Lucyus pe lythyre, that lorde was of Rome,
And conqueryd that kyngryke thorowe craftys of armes.
Herkenes now hedyrwarde, and herys this storye.
Qwen that the kynge Arthur by conqueste hade wonnyn
Castells and kyngdoms, and contreez many,
And he had couerede the coroun of the kyth ryche,
Of all that Vter in erthe aughte in his tym,
Orgayle and Orkenay, and all this owte-iles,
Irelande vttirly, as Occyane rynnys ;
Scathyll Scottlande by skyll he skyftys as hym lykys,
And Wales of were he wane at hys will,
Bathe Flaundrez and Fraunce fre til hym seluyn ;
Holaund and Henawde they helde of hym bothen,
Burgoyne and Brabane, and Bretayn the lesse,
Gyan and Gothelande, & Grece the ryche.
Bayon and Burdeux he beldytt full faire,
Turoyn and Tholus *with* toures full hye ;
Off Peyters and of Prouynce he was prynce holdyn,
Of Valence & Vyenne, off value so noble,
Of Eruge & Anyon, thos erledoms ryche.
By conqueste full cruell pey knewe hym fore lorde
Of Nauerne and Norwaye, & Normaundye eke,
Of Almayne, of Estriche, and *oper* ynowe ;
Danmarke he dryssede all by drede of hym seluyn,
Fra Swynn vnto Swetherwyke, *with* his swerde [1] kene.
Qwenn he thes dedes had don, he doubbyd hys knyghtez,
Dyuysyde dowcherys and delte in dyuerse remmes ;
Mad of his cosyns kyngys ennoyntede,
In kyth there they couaitte crounes to bere.
Whene he thys rewmes hade redyn & rewlyde the pople,
Then rystede that ryall and helde pe rounde tabyll ;
Suggeowros p*at* seson to solace hym seluen,
In Bretayn pe braddere, as hym beste lykes ;
Sythyn wente into Wales *with* his wyes all,
Sweys into Swaldye *with* his snell houndes,
For to hunt at pe hartes in thas hye laundes,
In Glamorgan *with* glee, thare gladchipe was eucre.

[1] MS. swrede. (Brock.)

And thare a citee he sette, be assentte of his lordys,
That Caerlyon was callid, *with* curius walles,
On the riche reuare pat rynnys so faire,
There he myghte semble his sorte to see whenn hym lykyde.
Thane aftyre at Carlelele a Cristynmese he haldes,
This ilke kyde cowqueroitr, & helde hym for lorde,
Wyth dukez & dusperes of dyuers rewmes,
Erles & ercheuesqes, and *oper* ynowe,
Byschopes & bachelers, & banerettes nobill
pat bowes to his banere, buske when hym lykys.
Bot on the Cristynmesdaye, when they were all semblyde,
That comlyche *conqnevouv* commaundez hym seluyn
pat ylke a lorde sulde lenge, and no lefe take,
To the tende day fully ware takyn to pe ende.
Thus on ryall araye he helde his rounde table,
With semblant & solace & selcouthe metes ;
Whas neucr syche noblay, in no manys tym,
Mad in mydwynter *in pa* weste marchys.
Bot on the newzere daye, at pe none euyne,
As the bolde at the borde was of brede seruyde,
So come in sodanly a senatour of Rome,
"Wyth sexten knyghtes in a soyte sewande hym one.
He salted the soucrayne & the sale aftyr,
like a kynge aftyre kynge, and mad his enclinea ;
Gaynowr in hir degré he grette as hym lykyde,
And syne agayne to pe gome he gaffe vp his nedys :
"Sir Lucws Iberins, the Empcrowr of Rome,
Saluz the as sugett, vndyre his sele ryche ;
It es credens, *sir* kynge, *with* cruell wordez,
Trow it for no trufles, his targe es to schewe !
Now in this newzers daye *with* notaries sygne,
I make the somouns *in* sale to sue for pi lanclys,
That on Lammesse daye thare be no lette fomiden,
pat thow bee redy at Rome *with* all thi rounde table,
Appere *in* his presens *with* thy price knyghtez,
At pryme of the daye, in payne of *zour* lyvys,
In pe kydde Capytoile before pe kyng selvyn,
When he and his senators bez sette as them lykes,

To ansuere anely why thow ocupyes the laundez,
That awe homage of aide till hym & his eldyrs ;
Why thow has redyn and raymede, & raunsound pe pople,
And kyllyde doun his cosyns, kyngys ennoynttyde.
Thare schall thow gyife rekkynynge for all thy round table,
Why thow arte rebell to Rome, and rentez them wytholdez.
ziff thow theis somouns wythsytte, he sendes thie thies wordes,
He sail the seke oner pe see wyth sexten kynges,
Bryne Bretayn pe brade, and bryttyn thy knyghtys,
And brynge the bouxsomly as a beste *with* brethe whare hym lykes,
That thow no schall rowte ne ryste vndyr the heuene ryche,
pofe thow for r*eddour* of Rome ryne to pe erthe.
For if thow flee into Fraunce or Freselaund owper,
pou sail be fechedr *with* force, and oucrsette fore *euer.*
Thy fadyr mad fewtee, we fynde in oure rollez,
In the regestre of Rome, who so ryghte lukez :
Withowttyn more trouflynge the trebute we aske,
That Iulkw Cesar wan wyth his ientill knyghttes ! "
THe kynge blyschit on the beryn *with* his brode eghn,
pat full brymly for breth brynte as the gledys ;
Keste colours as kyngtf *with* crouell lates,
Luked as a lyon, and on his lyppe bytes.
The Romaynes for radnesse ruschte to pe erthe,
Fore ferdnesse of hys face, as they fey were ;
Cowchide as kenetez before pe kynge seluyn,
Because of his contenaunce confusede them semede.
Then couerd vp a knyghte, & criede ful lowde,
" *Kynge corounede* of kynd, curtays and noble,
Misdoo no messangere for menske of pi seluyn,
Sen we are in thy manrede, and mercy pe besekes ;
We lenge *with sir* Lucius, that lorde es of Rome,
That es pe meruelyousteste man pat on molde lengez ;
It es lefull till vs his likynge till wyrche ;
We come at his commamtdment; haue vs excusede."
Then carpys fe *conquerour* ere well wordez,—
" Haa! crauaunde knyghte ! a cowarde pe semez!
pare [is][1] some segge in this sale, and he ware sare greuede,

i Words and letters inserted in brackets are from Brock's edition.

Thow durste noghte for[1] all Lumberdye luke on hym ones."
" Sir," sais pe senatowr, " *So* Crist mott me helpe,
pe voute of thi vesage has woundyde vs all!
Thow arte pe lordlyeste lede fat *euer* I one lukyde ;
By lukynge, withowttyn lesse, a lyon the semys ! "
"Thow has me somonde," *quod pe* kynge, "& said what pe lykes ;
Fore sake of thy soueraynge I suffre the pe more ;
" Sen I corouiidtf in kyth wyth crysum enoyntede,
Was neuer creature to me pat carpede so large.
Bot I sail tak concell at kynges enoyntede,
Off dukes & duspers and doctowrs noble,
Offe peres of p*e* parlement, prelates & oper,
Off pe richeste renkys of pe rounde table ;
pus schall I take avisemente of valiant beryns,
Wyrke aftyre the wytte of my wyes knyghttes :
To warpe wordez in waste no wyrchipe it were.
Ne wilfully in pis wrethe to wreken my seluen,
Forfi sail pow lenge here, & lugge wyth Jrise lordes,
This seuenyghte in solace, to suggowrne z*our* horses,
To see whatte lyfe p*at* wee leede in thees lawe laundes."
For by pe realtee of Rome, p*at* recheste was euere,
He commande s*ir Cnyoics*, " take kepe to thoos lordez,
To styghtyll pa steryn men as theire statte askys,
That they bee herberde in haste in thoos heghe chambres,
Sythin sittandly in sale seruyde theraftyr ;
That they fynd na fawte of fude to thiere horsez,
Nowthire weyn, ne waxe, ne welthe in pis erthe ;
Spare for no spycerye, bot spende what pe lykys,
That there be largesce on lofte, and no lake founden ;
If pou my wyrchipe wayte, wy, be my trouthe,
pou sail haue gersoms full grett, pat gayne sail pe euere ! "
Now er they herberde in hey, & in oste holden,
Hastyly wyth hende men *within* thees heghe wallez ;
In chambyrs *with* chympnes pey chaungen peire wedez,
And sythyn the chaimcelere pem fecchede *with* cheualrye[2] noble.
Sone pe senatowr was sett, as hym wele semyde,

1 MS. full. (Brock.)
2 MS. chelualrye. (Brock.)

At *pe* kyngez ownn borde; twa knyghtes hym smiede,
Singulere sothely, as Arthure hym seluyn,
Richely on *pe* ryghte haunde at the rounde table ;
Be resoun *pat pe* Romaynes whare so ryche holden,
As of pe realeste blode *pat* reynede in erthe.
There come in at *pe* fyrste course, befor pe *kynge* seluen,
Barehenedys *pat* ware bryghtef burnyste *with* syluer,
All *with* taghte men and town in togers full ryche,
Of saunke reall in suyte, sexty at ones;
Flesch fluriste of fermyson *with* frumentee noble,
Therto wylde to wale, and wynlyche bryddes,
Pacokes and plouers in platers of golde,
Pygges of porke despyne, *"pat* pasturede *nener;*
Sythen herons in hedoyne, hyled full faire ;
Grett swannes full swythe in silueryn chargeowrs,
Tartes of Twrky, taste wham *pern* lykys ;
Gumbaldes graythely, full gracious to taste ;
Seyne bowes of wylde bores *with pe* braune lechyde,
Bernakes and *bottcres* in baterde dysches,
pareby braunchers in brede, bettyr was neuer,
With brestez of barowes, *pat* bryghte ware to schewe.
Seyn come *per* sewes sere, *with* solace *perafter,*
Owndc of azure all *oner* & ardant pem semyde,
Of ilke a leche *pe* lowe lauwschide full bye,
pat all ledes myghte lyke *pat* lukyde pem apon ;
pan cranes & curlues craftyly rosted,
Connygez in cretoyne colourede full faire,
Fesauntez enflureschit in flammande silucr,
"With dariells endordide, and daynteez ynewe ;
pane clarett and Creette, clergyally rennen,
With condethes full curios all of clene siluyre ;
Osay a[n]d algarde, and *oper* ynewe,
Kynisch wyne and Rochell, richere was *neuer* ;
Vernage of Venyce wrtuouse, and Crete
In faucetez of fyn golde, fonode who so lykes.
The kyngez cope-borde was closed in silucr,
In grete goblettez oucrgylte glorious of hewe ;
There was a cheeffe buttlere, a cheualere noble,

Sir Cayous pe curtaise, *pat* of pe cowpe seruede,
Sexty cowpes of suyte fore pe kyng seluyn,
Crafty & curious, coruen full faire,
In euerilk a party pyghte *with* precyous stones,
That nan enpoyson sulde goo praiely per vndyre,
Bot pe bryght golde for brethe sulde briste al to peces,
Or ells *pe* venym sulde voyde thurghe vertue of *pe* stones ;
And the conquerowr hymseluen, so clenly arayede,
In colours of clene golde cleede, wyth his knyghttys,
Drissid *with* his dyademe on his deesse iyche,
Fore he was demydtf Jpe doughtyeste p*at* duellyde in erthe.
Thane *pe* conquerowr kyndly carpede to pose lordes,
Eehetede *pe* Romaynes *with* realle speche,
"Sirs, bez knyghtly of contenaunce, & comfurthes z*our* seluyn,
"We knowe noghte in pis countre of curious metez ;
In thees barayne landez, bredes non *oper,*
Forethy wythowttyn feynyngtf, enforce zow pe[1] more
To feede zow *with* syche feblo as ze before fynde."
" Sir," sais *pe* senatow, "so Criste motte me helpe !
There ryngnede neuer syche realtee within Rome walles.
There ne es prclatte, ne pape, ne prynce in pis erthe,
That he ne[2] rayghte be wele payede of fees pryce metes."
Aftyre theyre welthe pey wesche, & went vnto chambyre,
pis ilke kydde conqueror *with* knyghtes ynewe.
Sir Gaywayne *pe* worthye Dame *Wajnour* he ledys ;
Sir Owghtreth on *pe toper* syde, of Turry was lorde.
Thane spyces vnsparyly pay spendyde thereaftyre,
Maluesye & muskadell, pase nicmelyous drynkes,
Raykede full rathely in rossete cowpes,
Till all *pe* riche on rawe, Romaynes & *oper.*
Bot the souerayngne sothely, for solauce of hym seluen,
Assingnyde to *pe* senatowr certaygne lordes,
To lede to his leueré, whene he leue askes,
With myrthe & *with* melodye of mynstralsy noble.
Thane Jpe conqueror to concell cayres thereaftyre,
Wyth lordes of his lygeaunce pat to hym selfe langys ;
To *pe* geauntes toure iolily he wendes,

[1] MS. *pe zow.* (Brock.) [2] MS. ne he. (Brock.)

Wyth justicez & iūggez, and gentill knyghtes.
Sir Cador of Cornewayle to pe *kynge* carppes,
Lughe on hym luffiy *with* lykande lates,—
" I thanke Gode of pat thraa fat vs pus thretys !
zow moste be traylede, I trovve, bot zife ze trett bettyre :
pe *lettves* of *sir* Lucius lyghttys myn herte.
We hafe as losels liffyde many longe daye,
Wyth delyttes in this landc *with* lordchipez many,
And forelytenede the loos pat we are layttede :
I was abaischite, be oure Lorde, of oure beste bernes,
Fore gret dule of deffuse of dedez of armes.
Now wakkenyse p*e* were, wyrchipide be Cryste !
And we sail wynn it ag[a]lyne be wyghtnesse & strenghe."
" Sir Cadow," *quod* pe kyngtf, " thy concell es noble,
Bot pou arte a mcmailows man *with* tin mery wordez,
For thou countez no caas, ne castes no forthire,
Bot hurles furthe appon heuede, as tiṅ herte thynkes ;
I moste trette of a trew towchande pise nedes,
Talke of thies tythdands p*at* tenes myn herte.
pou sees pat pe *emperour* es angerde a lyttill,
Yt semes be his sandismen p*at* he es sore greuede ;
His senatowr has somwionde me, and said what hym lykyde,
Hethely in my hall, wyth heynzous wordes,
In speche disspyszede me, & sparede me lyttill;
I myght noghte speke for spytte, so my herte trymblyde.
He askyde me tyrauwtly tribute of Eome,
That tenefully tynt was in tym of myn elders ;
There alyenes, in absence of all men of armes,
Couerde it of commons, as cronicles telles.
I haue title to take tribute of Rome,
Myne ancestres ware emperours, & aughte it]pem seluen,
Belyn & Bremyn, & Bawdewyne the thyrde,
They ocupyede pe empyre aughte score wywnttyrs,
Ilkane ayere aftyre *oyer*, as awlde men telles ;
Thei couerde pe capitoile, and keste doun]pe walles,
Hyngede of peire heddys-men by huiidrethes at ones ;
Seyn Constantyne, our kynsmane, conquerid it aftyre,
pat ayere was of Ynglande, and *em-peroier* of Rome,

He pat conquerid pe crosse be craftez of armes,
That Criste was on crucifiede, pat kyng es of heuen.
Thus hafe we euydens to aske pe *emjperour* pe same,
That pus regnez at Rome whate ryghte pat he claymes."
pan answarde kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluyn,
"Thow aughte to be oucrlynge *ouer* all oper kynges,
Fore wyseste, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of haundes,
The knyghtlyeste of counsaile pat *eucr* coron bare.
I dare saye fore Scottlande, *pat* we them scliathe lympyde,
When pe Romaynes regnede, pay raunsounds oure eldyrs,
And rade in theire ryotte, and rauyschett oure wyfes,
Wzthowttyn reson or ryghte refte vs oure gudes ;
And I sail make myn avowe deuotly to Criste,
And to pe haly vmiacle, vertuus and noble,
Of this grett velany I sail be vengede ones
On zone venemus men, wyth valiant knyghtes.
I sail the forthire of defence fosterde ynewe,
Fifty thowsande men, wythin two eldes,
Of my wage for to wende, whare so the lykes,
To fyghte wyth thy faa men, pat vs unfaire ledes."
Thane the burelyche beryn of Bretayne pe lyttyll
Counsayles *sir* Arthure, and of hym besekys
To ansuere pe alyenes wyth austeren wordes,
To entyce the empcrour to take *ouere* the mounttes.
He said, "I make myn avowe verreilly to Cryste,
And to pe haly vernacle, pat voide schall I neuere,
For radnesse of na Romayne pat regnes in erthe ;
Bot ay be redye in araye, and at areste founden,
No more dowtte the dynte of theire derfe wapyns,
pan pe dewe pat es daunke, when pat it doun falies ;
Ne no more schouwe fore pe swape of theire scharpe suerddes,
Then fore pe faireste flow patt on the folde growes.
I sail to batell the brynge of brenyede knyghtes
Thyrtty thosaunde be tale, thryftye in armes,
Wythin a monethe daye into whatte marche
pat pow wyll sothelye assygne, when thy selfe lykes."
"A ! A! " sais pe Walsche kynge, "wirchipid be Criste !
Now schalle we wreke full wele pe wrethe of oure elders.

In West Walys i-wysse syche woundyrs fay wroglite,
pat all for wandrethe may wepe, fat on fat were thynkes.
I sail haue the avanttwarde wytterly my seluen,
Tyll fat I haue venquiste pe Vicounte of Rome,
pat wroghte me at Viterbe a velanye ones,
As I paste in pylgremage by the Pounte Tremble.
He was in Tuskayne fat tyme, and tuke of oure knyghttes,
Areste them vnryghttwyslye, and raunsoundc fam aftyre ;
I sail hym surelye ensure, fat saghetyll sail we neuer,
Are we sadlye assemble by oure selfen ones,
And dele dynttys of de the with oure derfe wapyns.
And I sall wagge to fat were of wyrchipfull knyghtes,
Of Wyghte and of Walschelande, and of fe weste marches,
Twa thosande in tale, horsede one stedys,
Of fe wyghteste wyes in all zone weste landys."
Syre Ewan fytz Vryenee[1] pane egerly fraynez,
Was cosyn to fe conqueror, corageows hymselfen,
"Sir, and we wyste *zour* wyll, we walde wirke fcraftyre,
zif fis jowmee sulde halde, or be ajostmede forthyre,
To ryde one zone Romaynes & ryott theire landez,
We walde schape vs therefore to schippe whene zow lykys."
" Cosyn," *quod* fe conquerow, " kyndly fou asches ;
zife my concell accorde to conquere jone landez,
By pe kalendez of Iuny we schall encountre ones,
Wyth full creuell knyghtez, so Cryste mot me helpe !
Thereto make I myn avowe devottly to Cryste,
And to pe holy veroacle, virtuous and noble,
I sail at Lammesse take leue, to lenge at my large
In Lorayne or Lumberdye, whethire me leue thynkys ;
Merke vnto Meloyne, and myne doun f e wallez,
Bathe of Petyrsande, & of Pys, and of f e Pounte Tremble,
In pe Vale of Viterbe vetaile my knyghttes,
Suggourne there sex wokes & solace my selfen ;
Send prckers to f e price toun, and plaunte there my segge,
Bot if pay profre me pe pece be processe of tym."
"Certys," sais sir Ewayn, "and I avowe aftyre,
And I *pat* hathell may see *ener with* myn eghn,

[1] *Read* Vryenee. (Brock.)

pat ocupies thin hmtage, *pe* empyere of Rome,
I sali auntyre me anes hys egle to touche,
pai borne es in his banere of brighte golde ryche,
And raas it from his riche men, and ryfe it in sondyre,
Bot he be redily reschowede w*ith rioìous* knyghtez.
I sali enforsse zowe in pe felde *with* fresche men of armes,
Fyfty thosande folke apon faire stedys,
On thi foo men to foonde, there the faire thynkes,
In Fraunce or in Friselande, feghte when pe lykes."
"By oure Lorde," *quod sir* Launcelott, "now lyghttys myn herte !
I Ione Gode of pis loue pis lordes has avowede.
Nowe may lesse men haue leue to say whatt them lykes,
And hafe no lettyng be lawe, bot lystynnys pise wordez.
I sali be at jowroee *with* gentili knyghtes,
On a jamby stede full jolyly graythide,
Or any jowrnee begane to juste w*ith* hym selfen,
Emange ali his geauntez Genyuers and *oper,*
Stryke hym styfflye fro his stede, w*ith* strenghe of myn handys,
For ali fa steryn in stowr, pat in his stale houys.
Be my retenu arayede, I rekke bott a lyttill
To make rowtte into Rome, *vrith* ryotows knyghtes ;
"Within a seuenyghte daye, w*ith* sex score helmes,
I sali be seen on the see, saile when pe lykes."
Thane laughes *sir* Lottez, and ali on lowde meles,
" Me likez pat *sir* Lucius launges aftyre sorowe ;
Now he wylnez pe were, hys wanedrethe begynnys,
It es owre weredes to wreke the wrethe of oure elders !
I make myn avowe to Gode, and to pe holy vcmacle,
And I may se pe Romaynes, p*at* are so ryche halden,
Arayede in peire notes on a rounde felde,
I sali at pe reuerence of pe rounde table
Ryde thrughte ali pe rowtte, rerewarde & oper,
Redy wayes to make, and renkkos full rowme,
Rynnande on rede blode, as my stede ruschez.
He p*at* folowes my fare, and fyrste conmes aftyre,
Sall fynde in my fare-waye manye fay leuyde."
Thane pe conquerowr kyndly comforthes pese knyghtes,
Alowes paim gretly theire lordly avowes,—

" Alweldande Gode wyrchipe zow all,
And latte me neuere wauntte zow, whylls I in werlde regne !
My menske and my manhede ze mayntene in erthe,
Myn honour all vtterly in *oper* kyngys Ian des ;
My wele and my wyrchipe, of all pis werlde ryche,
ze haue knyghtly conqueryde, pat to my coroun langes ;
Hym thare be ferde for no faces, pat swylke a folke ledes,
Bot eutfr fresche for to fyghte, in felde when hym lykes.
I acounte no kynge p*at* vndyr Criste lyffes,
Whills I see zowe all sonnde, I sette be no more."
Qwhen they tristily had tretyd, pay trimppede vp aftyre,
Descendyd doune *with* a daunce of dukes and erles ;
Thane pey semblede to sale, and sowpped als swythe,
All pis semly sorte, wyth semblante full noble.
Thene the roy reall rehetes thes knyghttys,
Wyth reuerence and ryotte of all his rounde table ;
Till aeuen dayes was gone pe senatorr askes
Answere to pe *emjperour with* austeryn wordez.
Aftyre *pe* Epiphanye, when pe purpos was takyn
Of peris of pe parlement, prelates and *oper,*
The kyng in his concell, curtaiso and noblee,
Vtters pe alienes, and ansuers hym seluen :—
" Gret wele *Lucius,* thi lorde, and layne noghte pise wordes ;
Ife pow be lyg-mane[1] lele, late hym wiet sone
I sail at Lammese take leue, and loge at my large
In delitte in his laundez, wyth lordes ynewe,
Regne in my realtee, and ryste when me lykes,
By Jre reyuere of Reone halde my rounde table,
Faunge the fermes in faithe[2] of all pa faire rewmes,
For all pe manace of hys myghte, & mawgree his eghne,
And merke sythen ouer the mounttez into his mayne londez,
To Meloyne the meruaylotw, and myn doun the walles;
In Lorrayne ne in Lumberdye lefe schall I nowthire
Nokyn lede appon liffe, pat pare his lawes jemes ;
And *turne* into Tuschayne, whene me tyme thynkys,
Ryde all pas rowme landes wyth ryotoiw knyghttes ;
Byde hy[m] make reschewes fore menske of hym seluen,

1 Or leygmane. (Brock.) **2 *Or* fatthe. (Brock.)**

And mette me fore his manhede in pase mayne landes.
I sail be foundyn in Fraunce, fraiste when hym lykes,
The fyrste daye of Feuerzere, in thas faire marches.
Are I be fechyde wyth force, or forfette my landes,
pe flour of his faire folke full fay sail be leuyde.
I sall hym sekyrly ensure, vndyre my seele ryche,
To seege pe cetee of Rome wythin seuen wyntyre,
And that so sekerly ensege apon sere halfes,
That many a senatowr sail syghe for sake of me one.
My sommons er certifiede and pow arte full *seruyde*
Of cu̅ndit and credense, kayre whene the lykes :
I sail thi jowmaye engyste, enjoyne them my seluen,
Fro this place to pe porte, there pou sail passe *oner ;*
Seuen dayes to Sandewyche, I sette at the large,
Sexty myle on a daye, pe somme es bott lyttill,
Thowe moste spede at the spurs, and spare noghte thi fole,
Thow weyndez by Watlyng-strette, and by no waye ells.
Thare thow nyghttes on nyghte, nedez moste pou lenge,
Be it foreste or felde, found foil no forthire ;
Bynde thy blonke by a buske *with* thy brydill euen
Lugge pi selfe vndyre lynde, as]pe leefe thynkes ;
There awes none alyenes to ay er appon nyghttys,
With syche a rebawdous rowtte to ryot thy seluen.
Thy lycence es lemete in presence of lordys,
Be now lathe or lette, ryghte as pe thynkes,
For bothe pi lyffe and thi lym lygges ferappon,
pofe *sir* Lucms had laide pe lordchipe of Rome ;
For be pow founden a fute withowte pe node merkes,
Aftyr pe aughtende day, when vndroun es rungen,
pou sail be heuedede in hye, & *with* horsse drawen,
And seyn heyly be hangede, houndes to gnawen ;
The rente ne rede golde, *"pat* vnto Kome langes,
Sail noghte redily, renke, raunson thyn one."
"Sir," sais pe senator, "so Crist mot me helpe !
Might I *with* wirchipc wyn awaye ones,
I sulde neucr, fore *em-perour p*at on erthe lenges,
Efte vnto Arthure ayere on syche nedys.
Bot I am sengilly here, *with* sex sum of knyghtes,

I beseke zow, *sir,* that we may sounde passe :
If any vnlawefull lede lette vs by pe waye,
Within thy lycence, lorde, thy loosse es enpeyrede."
" Care noghte," *quod* the kynge, " thy coundyte es knawen
Fro Carlelele to pe coste, there thy cogge lengges ;
poghe thy cofers ware full, cramede *with* syluer,
Thow myghte be sekyre of my sele sexty my le forthire."
They enclined to pe kynge, and counge' pay askede,
Cayers owtt of Carelele, catchez on theire horsez ;
Sir Cadore pe curtayes kende them the wayes,
To Catrike Jpem cuwvayede, & to Crist pem bekennyde.
So |peyspede at *pe* spoures, *pey* sprangen peire horses,
Hyres Jpem hakenayes hastyly pereaftyre ;
So fore reddowr pey reden, and risted them neuer,
Bot zif they luggede vndire lynd, whills pem lyghte failede ;
Bot euere pe senator forsothe soghte at *pe* gayneste.
By pe seuendtf day was gone *pe* cetee pai rechide ;
Of all pe glee vndire Gode so glade ware pey neuere,
As of Jpe sounde of pe see and Sandwyche belles.
Wythowttyn more stownntynge they schippide peire horsez,
Wery to pe wane see Jpey went all att ones ;
With pe men of Jpe walle they weyde vp peire ankyrs,
And fleede at pe fore flude, in Flaundrez pey rowede,
And thorughe Flaundres pey founde, as pem faire thoghte,
Till Akyn in Almayn in Arthur landes ;
Gosse by pe Mount Goddarde full greuous wayes,
And so into Luwberddye, lykande to schewe.
They turne thurghe Tuskayne, *with* towres full heghe,
In pris appairells them, in precious wedez ;
The Sonondaye in Suters pay suggowrne peire horsez,
And sekes pe seyntez of Rome, be assente of knyghtes
Sythyn prekes to *pe* pales *with* portes so ryche,
paxe sir Lucius lenges *with* lordes enowe,
Lowttes to hym lufly, and *lettres* hym bedes
Of credence enclosyde, *with* knyghtlyche wordez.
Then Jpe *emperour* was egree, and enkerly frayues,
pe answere of Arthure he askes hym sone,
How he arayes pe rewme, & rewlys pe pople,

zif he be rebell to Rome, whate ryghte pat he claymes :
" Thow sulde his ceptre haue sesede, & syttyn aboun,
Fore reuerence and realtee of Rome pe noble :
By sertes pow was my sandes, & senator of Rome,
He sulde for solempnitee hafe scruede pe hym seluen."
" pat will he *newer* for no waye[1] of all pis werlde ryche,
" Bot who may wynn hym of werre, by wyghtnesse of handes ;
Many fey schall be fyrste appon pe felde leuyde,
Are he appere in this place, profre when pe likes.
I saye the, *sir,* Arthure es thyn enmye fore euer,
And ettells to bee *ouerlyngw* of pe empyre of Rome,
That alle his ancestres aughte, bot Vtere hym selfe.
Thy nedes this newe zere, I notifiede my selfen,
Before p*at* noble of name & neynesom of kynges ;
In the moste reale place of pe rounde table,
I somounde hym solempnylye, one-seeande his knyghtez ;
Sen I was formyde in faythe so ferde was I neuere,
In all *the* placez ther I passede of pryncez in er the :
I wolde foresake all my suyte of segnourry of Rome,
Or I efte to pat soueraygne whare sente one suyche nedes.
He may be chosyn cheftayne, cheefe of all *oper,*
Bathe be chauncez of armes and cheuallrye noble,
For whyeseste, & worthyeste, and wyghteste of haundez
Of all the wyes pate I watte in this werlde ryche,
The knyghtlyeste creatowre in Cristyndome haldeu,
Of kyngc or of conquerowr, crownede in erthe,
Of countenaunce, of corage, ofcrewelle lates,
The comlyeste of knyghtehode *"pat* vndyre Cryste lyffes.
He maye be spoken in dyspens, despysere of syluere,
That no more of golde gyffes fan of grette stones,
No more of wyne pan of watyre, pat of pe welle rynnys,
Ne of welthe of pis werlde bot wyrchipe all one.
Syche contenaunce was neuer knowen in no kythe ryche,
As was *with p*at connquerour in his courte halden ;
I countede at this Crystynmesse, of kyngez enoynttede,
Hole ten at his table, pat tym *with* hym selfen.
He wyll werraye i-wysse, be ware zif pe lykes,

[1] ?wye. (Brock.)

Wage many wyghtemen, and wache thy marches,
That they be redye in araye, and at areste foundyn ;
For zife he reche vnto Rome, he raunsouws it for *euerc.*
I rede fow dresce the perfore, and drawe no lytte langere,
Be sekyre of pi sowdeours, and sende to pe mowntes ;
Be pe qwartere of pis zere, and hym quarte staunde,
He wylle wyghtlye in a qwhyle on his wayes hye."
" "Dee Estyre," sais *pe emperour,* " I ettyll my selfen
-B To hostaye in Almayne *with* armede knyghtez ;
Sende freklye into Fraunce, pat flour es of rewmes,
Fande to fette pat freke, & forfette his landez ;
For I sail sette kepers, full conaunde & noble,
Many geaunte of Geen, justers full gude,
To mete hym in the mountes, & martyre hys knyghtes,
Stryke pem doun in strates, and struye them fore eucre.
There sail appon Godarde a garette be rerede,
That schall be garneschte & kepyde *with* gude men of armes,
And a bekyn abouenn to brynne when pem lykys,
pat nane enmye *with* hoste sail entre the mountes ;
There schall one Mounte Bernarde be beyldede anojxre,
Buschede with bancrettes and bachelers noble :
In at the portes of Pavye schall no prynce passe,
Thurghe the *perelous* places, for my pris knyghtes."
Thane *sir* Lueius lordlyche *lettres* he sendys
Onone into pe Oryente, with austeryn knyghtez,
Till Ambyganye and Orcage, and Alysaundyre eke,
To Inde and to Ermonye, as Ewfrates rynnys,
To Asye, and to Affrike, and Ewrope pe large,
To Irritayne, and Elamet, and all pase owte ilez ;
To Arraby and Egipt, till erles and ofer
That any erthe ocupyes in pase este marches
Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and erles.
For drede of his daungere they dressidc pem sone ;
Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys
Come at his commandmente, clenly at ones ;
To Tartary & Turky, when tythynngez es comen,
They turne in by Thebay, terauntez full hugge,
The flour of *pe* faire folke, of Amazonnes landes ;

All thate faillez on *pe* felde be forfette fore euere !
Of Babyloyn and Baldake the burlyche knyghtes,
Bayous with feire baronage bydez no langere,
Of Perce, and of Pamphile, and *Freter* Iohne landes,
Iche prynce *with* his powere appertlyche graythede.
The Sowdane of Surrye assemblez his knyghtes,
Era Nylus to Nazarethe, nommers full huge ;
To Garyere & to Galeľe *pej* gedyre all at ones.
The Sowdanes that ware sekyre sowdeours to Rome,
They gadyrede *ouere pe* Grekkes See *with* greuows wapyns,
In theire grete galays, wyth gletminde scheldez ;
The kynge of Cyprys on *pe* see *pe* Sowdane habydes,
"*With* all *pe* realis of Roodes, arayede *with* hym one ;
They sailede *with* a syde wynde oure *pe* salte strandez,
Sodaoly *pe* Sarezenes, as them selfe lykede ;
Craftyly at Cornett the kynges are aryefede,
Fra *pe* cote of Rome sexti myle large.
Be that the Grekes ware graythede, a full gret nombyre,
The myghtyeste of Macedone, *with* men of pa marches,
Pull and Pruyslande presses *with oper*,
The lege-men of Lettow *with* legyons ynewe.
Thus they semble in sortes, surames full huge,
Sowdanes and Sarezenes owt of sere landes ;
The Sowdane of Surry and sextene kynges,
At the cetee of Rome assemblede at ones.
Thane yschewes *pe emperour* armede at ryghtys,

Arayede *with* his Romaynes appon ryche stedys ;
Sexty geauntes before, engenderide *with* fendez,
With weches and warlaws to wacchen his tentys,
Ayware whare he wendes, wyntrez and Jeres.
Myghte no blonkes them bere, thos bustows churlles,
Bot couerde camellez of tourse, enclosyde in maylez ;
He ayerez oute *with* alyenez, ostes full huge,
Ewyn into Almayne, pat Arthure hade wonnyn ;
Rydes in by *pe* ryuere, and ryottez hym seluen,
And ayerez *with* a huge wyll all pas hye landez.
All "Westwale of werre he wynnys as hym lykes,
Brawes in by Danuby, and dubbez hys knyghtez ;

In the contré of Coloine castelles enseggez,
And suggeowmez *pat* seson wyth Sarazenes ynewe.
At the vtas of Hillary, syr Arthure hym seluen
In his kydde councell commande Jpe lordes,—
" Kayere to *pur* cuwtrez, and semble *pur* knyghtes,
And kepys me at Constantyne clenlyche arayede ;
Byddez me at Bareflete apon fa blythe stremes,
Baldly wit/an borde *with* zowre beste beryns ;
I schall menskfully zowe mete in thos faire marches."
He sendez furthe sodayuly sergeantes of armes,
To all hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schippys ;
Wythin sexten dayes hys fleet whas assemblede,
At Sandwyche on pe see, saile when hym lykes.
In the palez of zorke a parlement he haldez,
With all *pe* perez of *pe* rewme, prelates and *oper*,
And aftyre *pa* prafmyngc in presence of lordes,
The kyng in his concell carpys pes wordes ;—
" I am in pwrpos to passe pcriiotw wayes,
To kaire *with* my kene men, to conquere 3one landes,
To owttraye myn enray, zif aucnture it schewe,
That ocupyes myn heritage, *pe* empyre of Kome.
I sett jow here a soueraynge, ascente zif zowe lykys,
That es me sybb, my syster son, sir Mordrede hym seluen,
Sail be my leuetenaiuite, *with* lordchipez ynewe,
Of all my lele lege-men, *pat* my landez zemes."
He carpes till his cosyne pane, in comisaile hym seluen,—
"I make the kepare, *sir* knyghte, of kyngrykes manye,
Wardayne wyrchipfull, to weilde al my landes
That I haue wonnen of werre in all *pis* werlde ryche.
I wyll *pat* Waynowr, my weife, in wyrchipe be holden,
That hire waunte noo wele, ne welthe pat hire lykes ;
Luke my kydde castells be clenlyche arrayede,
There cho maye suggowrae hire selfe, wyth semlyche berynes.
Faunde my forestez be frythede, o frenchepe for *enere*,
That nane werreye my wylde, botte Waynowr hir seluen,
And pat in *pe* seson whene grees es assignyde,
That cho take hir solauce in certayne tymms.[1]

1 MS. not quite clear.

Chauncelere and chambyrleyn chaunge as pe lykes,
Audytowrs and offycers ordayne thy seluen,—
Bathe jureez, and juggez, and justicez of landes,
Luke thow justyfye them,wele that injurye wyrkes :
If me be destaynede to dye at Dryghtyns wyll,
I charge the my sektowr, cheffe of all *oper*,
To mynystre my mobles, fore mede of my saule,
To mendynamitez and mysese in myschefe fallen :
Take here my testament of tresowre full huge,
As I trayste appon the, betraye thowe me neuer !
As pow will answere before the austeryn jugge,
That all pis werlde wynly wysse as hym lykes,
Luke pat my laste wyll be lelely perfowrnede.
Thow has clenly pe cure that to my coroune langez,
Of all my werdez wele, and my weyffe eke;
Luke powe kepe the so clere, there be no cause fonden,
When I to contre come, if Cryste will it thole ;
And thow haue grace gudly to goucrne thy seluen,
I sail coroune pe, knyghte, kyng with my handez."
pan sir Modrede full myldly meles hym seluen,
Knelyd to jpe conquerour, aud carpes pise wordez,—
" I beseke zow, sir, as my sybbe lorde,
Jtat ze will for charyte cheese zow *anoper* ;
For if ze putte me in pis plytte, zowre pople es dyssauyde,
To presente a prynce astate my powere es symple.
When *oper* of werre wysse are wyrchipide hereaftyre,
Than may I forsothe be sette bott at lyttill.
To passe in *zour* presance my pwrpos es takyn,
And all my pwrueaunce apperte fore my pris knyghtez."
" Thowe arte my neuewe full nere, my nwrrree of olde,
That I haue chastyede and chosen, a childe of my chambyre ;
For the sybredyn of me, foresake noghte pis offyce
That thow ne wyrk my will, thow watte whatte[1] it mones."
Nowe he takez hys leue, and lengez no langere,
At lordez, at lege-men, pat leues hym byhynden.
And seyne pat worthilyche wy went vnto chambyre
For to comfurthe pe qwene, pat m care lenges ;

1 MS, whatte watte. (Brock.)

Waynowr waykly wepande hym kyssiz,
Talkez to hym tenderly *with* teres ynewe,—
" I may wery the wye thatt this werre mouede,
That warnes me wyrchippe of my wedde lorde ;
All my lykyng^ of lyfe owte of lande wendez,
And I in langowr am lefte, leue ze, for eucre !
Why ne myghte I, dere lufe, dye in *zour* armes,
Are I pis destanye of dule sulde drye by myne one ?"
" Grefe pe noghte, Gaynoitr, fore Goddes lufe of hewen,
Ne gruche noghte my ganggyngtf, it sail to gude turne.
Thy wonrydez and thy wepynge woundez myn herte,
I may noghte wit of pis woo, for all Jns werlde ryche ;
I haue made a kepare, a knyghte of thyn a wen,
Ouerlynge of Ynglande vndyre thy seluen,
And that es sir Mordrede, pat pow has mekyll praysede,
Sail be thy dictour, my dere, to doo whatte the lykes."
Thane he takes hys leue at ladys in chambyre,
Kysside them kyndlyche, and to Criste beteches,
And then cho swounes full swythe, whe[u] he hys swerde aschede,
Twys in a swounyng, swelte as cho walde.
He pressed to his palfray, in presance of lordes,
Prekys of the palez *with* his prys knyghtes,
Wyth a reall rowte of pe rounde table,
Soughte towarde Sandwyche ; cho sees hym no more !
Thare the grete ware gederyde, wyth galyarde knyghtes,
Garneschit on *pe* grene felde and graythelyche arayede ;
Dukkes and duzseperez daynttehely rydes,
Erlez of Ynglande *with* archers ynewe :
Schirreues scharply schiftys the comouns,
Rewlys before pe ryche of the rounde table,
Assirtgnez ilke a contree to certayne lordes,
In the southe on pe see banke saile when pem lykes.
Thane bargez them buskez, and to *pe* baunke rowes,
Bryngez blonkez on bourde, and burlyche helmes ;
Trussez in tristly trappyde stedes,
Tenntez and othire toylez, and targez full xyche,
Cabanes, & clathe-sekkes, and coferez full noble,
Hukes and haknays, and horsez of armez;

Thus they stowe in the stuffe of full steryn knyghtez.
Qwen all was schyppede that scholde, they schounte no lengere,
Bot ventelde them tyte, as *pe* tyde rynnez ;
Coggez and crayers pan crossez faire mastez,
At the commandment of pe kynge, vncouerde at ones.
Wyghtly on *pe* wale pay wye vp paire ankers,
By wytt of *pe* watyre-men of pe wale ythez ;
Frekes on pe forestayne faken Jpeire coblez,
In floynes, and fercostez, and Flemesche schyppes,
Tytt saillez to *pe* toppe, and *turnez* pe lufe,
Standez appon stere-bourde, sterynly pay songen.
The pryce schippez of the porte prouen theire depnesse,
And fondez wyth full saile ower pe fawe ythez ;
Holly wit/towttyn harme pay hale in bottes,
Schipe-men scharply schoten baire portez,
Launchez lede apon lufe, lacchen p*er* depez,
Lukkes to pe lade-sterne, when pe lyghte faillez,
Castez coursez be crafte, when *pe* clowde rysez,
With pe nedyll and *pe* stone one pe nyghte tydez.
For drede of pe derke nyghte pay drecchede a lyttill,
And all pe steŕyn of pe streme strekyn at onez.
The kynge was in a gret cogge, *with* knyghtez full many,
In a cabane enclosede, clenlyche arayede,
Within on a ryche bedde rystys a littyll,
And *with* pe swoghe of pe see in swefnyngtf he fell.
Hym dremyd of a dragon, dredfull to beholde,
Come dryfande *oner* Jpe depe to drenschen hys pople,
Ewen walkande owte of the weste landez,
Wanderande vnworthyly ouere the wale ythez ;
Bothe his hede and hys hals ware halely all *ower*
Oundyde of azure, enamelde full faire :
His scoulders ware schalyde all in clene sylucre,
Schreede *oner* all pe schrympe *with* schrinkande poyntez ;
Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfull hewes,
In *mermylous* maylys he mountede full hye ;
Whaym p*at* he towchede he was tynt for euer.
Hys feete ware floreschede all in fyne sabyll,
And syche a v*ennymous* flayre flowe fro his lyppez,

That the flode of pe flawez all on fyre semyde.
Thane come of pe Oryente, ewyn hym agaynez,
A blake bustows bere abwen in the clowdes,
With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes full huge,
With pykes full -*perilous*, all ply an de pam semyde,
Lothen and lothely, lokkes and *oyer*.
All wit*h* lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire,
Filtyrde vnfrely, wyth fomaunde lyppez,
The foulleste of fegure that fottrmede was *ever*.
He baltyrde, he bleryde, he braundysehte *perafter*;
To bataile he bounnez hym *with* bustows clowez:
He romede, he rarede, that roggede all pe er the,
So ruydly he rappyd at to ryot hym seluen.
Thane the dragon on dreghe dressede hym ajaynez,
And *with* hys d[i]nttez hym drafe one dreghe by pe walkyn :
He fares as a fawcon, frekly he strykez ;
Bothe *with* feete and *with* fyre he feghttys at ones.
The bere in the bataile)pe bygger hym semyde,
And byttes hym boldlye wyth balefull tuskez ;
Syche buffetez he hym rechez *with* hys brode klokes,
Hys brest and his brayell whas blodye all *oner*.
He rawmpyde so ruydly that all pe er the ryfez,
Rynnande on reede blode as rayne of the heuen.
He hade weryede the worme by wyghtnesse of strenghte,
Ne ware it fore pe wylde fyre p*at* he hym wyth defendez.
Thane wandyrs pe worme awaye to hys heghttez,
Cowimes glydande fro Jpe clowddez, and cowpez full euen,
Towchez hym wyth his talounez, and terez hys rigge,
Betwyx fe taile and the toppe ten fote large.
Thus he brittenyd the bere, and broghte hym o lyfe,
Lette hym fall in the flode, fleete whare hym lykes.
So they brynge pe bolde kyng bynne *pe* schippe-burde,
pat nere he bristez for bale, on bede whare he lyggez.
Than waknez pe wyese kynge, wery foretrauaillede,
Takes hym two phylozophirs, that folowede hym cuer,
In the seuyn scyence the suteleste fonden,
The cony[n]geste of clergye vndyre Criste knowen ;
He tolde pem of hys tourmente, pat tym pat he slepede ;

" Drechede *with* a dragon, and syche a derfe beste,
Has mad me full wery; ze tell me my swefen,
Ore I mon swelte as swythe, as wysse me oure Lorde."
"Sir," saide pey son thane, thies sagge philosopherse,
" The dragon *pat pow* dremyde of, so dredfull to schewe,
That come dryfande *oner pe* deepe, to drynchen thy pople,
Sothely and certayne thy seluen it es,
That thus saillez *oner pe* see *with* thy sekyre knyghtez.
The colurez pat ware castyn appon his clere wengez
May be thy kyngrykez all, that thow has ryghte wonnyn ;
And the tachesesede taile, *with* tonges so huge,
Betakyns *pis* faire folke, that in thy fleet wendez.
The here that bryttenede was abowen in *pe* clowdez,
Betakyns the tyrauntez pat towrmentez thy pople;
Or ells *with somme* gyaunt some *joumee* sail happyn,
In syngulere batell by 3oure selfe one,
And pow sail hafe *pe* victorye tliurghe helpe of oure Lorde,
As pow in thy visione was opynly schewede.
Of this dredfull dreme ne drede the no more,
Ne kare noghte, *sir* conqueror, bot comforth thy seluen ;
And thise pat saillez oucr *pe* see, *with* thy sekyre knyghtez."
With trumppez then trystly, they trisen vpe paire saillez,
And rowes *oner* the ryche see, this rowtte all at onez ;
The comely coste of Normandye they cachen full euen,
And blythely at Barflete theis holde are arryfede,
And fyndys a flete there of frendez ynewe ;
The floure and *pe* faire folke of fyftene rewmez
Fore kyngez and capytaynez kepyde hym fay re,
As he at Carelele cowimaundyde at Cristymesse hym seluen.
Be they had taken the lande, and tentez vpe rerede,
Comez[1] atemplere tyte, and towchide to *pe* kynge—
" Here es a teraunt besyde that townnentez thi pople,
A grett geaunte of Geen, engenderde of fendez ;
He has fretyn of folke mo than fyfe hondrethe,
And als fele fawntekyns of freebornne childyre.
This has bene his sustynaunce all this seuen wyntteres,
And zitt es that sotte noghte sadde, so wele hym it lykez ;

[1] *Or* **Commez. (Brock.**

In *pe* contree of Constantyne no kynde has he leuede,
Withowttyn kydd castells enclosid wyth walles,
That he ne has clenly dystroyede all the knaue childyre,
And them caryede to *pe* cragge, and clenly deworyde.
The duchez of Bretayne todaye has he takyn,
Beside Reynes as scho rade with hire ryche knyghttes,
Ledd hyre to pe mountayne, thare pat lede lengez,
To lye by that lady, aye whyls hir lyfe lastez.
We folowede o ferrom moo then fyfe hundrethe,
Of beryns, and of burgeys, and bachelers noble,
Bot he couerde the cragge ; cho cryede so lowde,
The care of pat creatoiire couer sail I neuer.
Scho was *flour* of all Fraunce, or of fyfe rewmes,
And one of the fayreste that fowrmede was euere,
The gentileste jowell ajuggede *with* lordes,
Fro Geen vnto Geron, by *Ihesu* of heuen !
Scho was thy wyfes cosyn, knowe it if *pe* lykez,
Comen of pe rycheste, that rengnez in erthe :
As thow arte ryghtwise *kynge* rewe on thy pople,
And fande for to venge them, that thus are rebuykyde."
" Alias ! " sais *sir* Arthure, " so lange haue I lyffede,
Hade I wyten of this, wele had me chefede ;
Me es noghte fallen faire, bot me es foule happynede,
That thus this faire ladye this fende has dystroyede.
I had leuere thane all Fraunce, this fyftene *wynter*,
I hade bene before thate freke, a furlange of waye,
When he that ladye had laghte and ledde to *pa* montez :
I hadde lefte my lyfe are cho hade harme lymppyde.
Bot walde pow kene me to *pe* crage, thare pat kene lengez,
I walde cayre to *pat* coste, and carpe wythe hym seluen,
To trette *witli* that tyraunt fore treson of londes,[1]
And take trewe for a tym, till it may tyde bettyre."
"Sire, see ze zone farlande, *with* zone two fyrez ?
par filsnez zat fende, fraiste when the lykes,
Appone the creste of the cragge, by a colde welle,
That enclosez *pe* clyfe *with pe* clere strandez ;
Ther may thow fynde folke fay wythowttyn nowmer,

[1] *Originally* lordez. (Brock.)

Mo florenez in faythe than Fraunce es in aftyre ;
And more *tvesour* vntrewely -that traytowr has getyn,
Thane in Troye was, as I trowe, pat tym pat it was wonn."
Thane romyez the ryche kynge for rewthe of *pe* pop le,
Raykez ryghte to a tente, and restez no lengere ;
He welterys, he wristeles, he wryngez hys handez,
Thare was no wy of pis werlde, pat wyste whatt he menede.
He calles sir Cayows, *pat* of *pe* cowpe serfede,
And *air* Bedvere *pe* bolde, pat bare hys brande ryche,—
" Luke ze aftyre euensangtf be armyde at ryghttez,
On blonkez by zone buscayle, by zone blythe stremez,
Fore I will passe in pilgremage preuely hereaftyre,
In the tyme of suppere, whene lordez are servede,
For to seken a saynte be zone salte stremes,
In seynt Mighell mount, there myraclez are schewede."
Aftyre euesange, sir Arthure hym se[l]fen
Wente to hys wardrope, and warpg of hys wedez,
Armede hym in a acton *with* orfraeez full ryche,
Abouen on pat a jeryn of Acres owte *oner*,
Abouow pat a jesseraunt of jentyll maylez,
A jupon of Ierodyn jaggede in schredez.
He brayedez one a bacenett burneschte of sylucr,
The beste pat was in Basill, wyth bordurs ryche ;
The creste and *pe* coronall, enclosed so faire
"Wyth clasppis of clere golde, couched wyth stones ;
The vesare, *pe* aventaile, enarraede so faire,
Voyde withowttyn vice, *with* wyndowes of *ayluer* ;
His gloues gaylyche gilte, and grauen at *pe* hemmez,
With graynez and gobelets, gloriows of hewe ;
He bracez a brade schelde, and his brande aschez,
Bounede hym a broun stede, and on *pe* bente houys.
He sterte till his sterepe and stridez on lofte,
Streynez hym stowttly, and sterys hym faire,
Brochez *pe* baye stede, and to *pe* buske rydez,
And there hys knyghtes hym kepede full clenlyche arayede.
Than they roode by fat ryuer,[1] *pat* rynnyd so swythe,
pare *pe* ryndez ouerrechez *with* reall bowghez ;

[1] MS. ryuerer.

The roo and pe rayne-dere reklesse thare ronnen,
In ranez and in rose is to ryotte *pom* seluen ;
The frithez ware floreschte with flourez full many,
Wyth fawcouns and fesantez of ferlyche hewez ;
All *pe* feulez thare fleschez, that flyez *with* wengez,
Fore thare galede *pe* gowke one greuez full lowde,
Wyth alkyn gladchipe pay gladden pem seluen :
Of *pe* nyghtgale notez pe noisez was swette,
They threpide wyth the throstills, thre hundreth at ones,
pat whate swowynge of watyre, and syngynge of byrdez,
It myghte salue hym of sore, pat souude was neucre.
Than ferkez this folke, and on fotte lyghttez,
Festenez theire faire stedez o ferrom bytweñe ;
And thene the kyngg kenely comandyde hys knyghtez
For to byde *with* theire blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,—
" Fore I will seke this seynte by my selfe one,
And mell *with* this mayster mane, *pat* this monte zemez ;
And seyn sail ze offyre, aythyre aftyre *oper,*
Menskfully at Saynt Mighell full myghtty *with* Criste ! "
The kyng coueris *pe* cragge wyth cloughes full hye,
To the creste of the clyffe he clymbez on lofte ;
Keste vpe hys vmbrere, and kenly he lukes
Caughte of pe colde wynde to comforthe hym seluen ;
Two fyrez he fyndez flawmande full hye,
The fourtedele a furlange betwene *pus* he walkes ;
The waye by *pe* welle strandez he wandyrde hym one,
To wette of *pe* warlawe, whare pat he lengez ;
He ferkez to *pt* fyrste fyre, and euen there he fyndez
A wery wafull wedowe, wryngande hire handez,
And gretande on a graue grysely teres,
New merkyde on molde, sen myddaye it semede :
He salujede *pat* sorowfull *with* sittande wordez,
And fraynez aftyre the fende fairely thereaftyre.
Thane this wafull wyfe vnwynly hym gretez,
Couerde vp on hire kneesse, and clappyde hire handez ;
Said, "care-full eareman, thow carpez to lowde,
May zone warlawe wyt, he worows vs all.
Weryd worthe *pe* wyghte ay, that *pe* thy wytt refede,

That mase the to wayfe here in Jrise wylde lakes !
I warne *pe* fore wyrchipe, *pou* wylnez aftyr sorowe.
Whedyre buskes *pou* berne ? vnblysside *pow* semes,
Wenez thow to britten hym *with* thy brande ryche ?
Ware thow wyghttere than "Wade or Wawayn owthire,
Thow wynnys no wyrchipe, I warne the before ;
Thow saynned the vnsekyrly to seke to pese mountez,
Siche sex ware to symple to semble *with* hym one ;
For and thow see hym *with* syghte, the seruez no herte,
To sayne the sekerly, so semez hym huge.
Thow arte frely and faire, and in thy fyrste flourez,
Bot thow arte fay be my faythe, and pat me forthynkkys.
Ware syche fyfty on a felde, or one a faire erthe,
The freke walde *with* hys fyste fell zow at ones.
Loo ! here the duchez dere,—to daye was cho takyn,—
Depe doluen and dede, dyked in moldez ;
He hade morthirede this mylde be myddaye war rongen,
"*Withow*ttyn mercy one molde, I not watte it ment:
He has forsede hir and fylede, and cho es fay leuede ;
He slewo hir vnslely, and slitt hir to *pe* nauyll,
And here haue I bawmede hir, and beiyede Jperaftyr;
For bale of *pe* botelesse, blythe bs I *newer.*
Of alle *pe* frendez cho hade, pere folowede none aftyre,
Bot I, hir foster modyr of fyftene wynter ;
To ferke of this farlande, fande sail I neuer,
Bot here be founden on felde, till I be fay leuede."
Thane answers *sir* Arthure to *pat* aide wyf;
" I am comyn fra *pe conquerour,* curtaise and gentill,
As one of pe hathelest of Arthur knyghtez,
Messenger to pis *myxen,*[1] for mendemente of *pe* pople,
To mele *with* this maister man, that here this mouwte zemez ;
To trete with this tyraunt for tresow of landez,
And take trew for a tym, to bettyr may worthe."
" Ja, thire wordis are bot waste," *quod* this wif thane,
" For bothe landez and lythes full lyttill by he settes ;
Of rentez ne of rede golde rekkez he *neucr,*
For he will lenge out of lawe, as hym selfe thynkes,

1 MS. has unusual contraction for *en* here.

WitAouten licence of le le, as lorde in his awen.
Bot he has a kyrtill one, kepide for hym seluen,
That was sponen in Spayne with specyall byrdez,
And sythyn garnescht in Grece full graythly togedirs ;
It es hydede all *with* hare hally al ouere,
And bordyrde *with* the berdez of burlyche kyngez,
Crispid and kombide, that kempis may knawe
Iche *kynge* by his colow, in kythe there he lengez.
Here the fennez he fangez of fyftene rewmez,
For ilke Esterne ewyn, howeuer that it fall,
They send it hym sothely for saughte of Jpe pople,
Sekerly at pat seson *with* certayne knyghtez,
And he has aschede Arthure all pis seuen wyrmtter.
Forthy hurdez he here, to owttraye hys pople,
Till *pe* Bretons *kynge* haue burneschte his lyppys,
And sent his berde to that bolde wyth his beste berynes ;
Bot thowe hafe broghte pat berde, bowne the no forthire,
For it es butelesse bale thowe biddez oghte ells ;
For he has more tresowr to take when hym lykez,
Than *euere* aughte Arthure, or any of hys elders.
If thowe hafe broghte Jpe berde, he bese more blythe
Thane powe gafe hym Burgoyne, or Bretayne Jpe more ;
Bot luke nowe for charitee, pow chasty thy lyppes,
That the no wordez eschape, whate so betydez ;
Luke *pi* presante be priste, and presse hym bott lytill,
For he es at his sowper, he will be sone greuyde.
And pow my concell doo, pow dosse of thy clothes,
And knele in thy kyrtyll, and call hym thy lorde.
He sowppes all *pis* seson *with* seuen knaue childre,
Choppid in a chargowr of chalke whytt syluer,
Wiih pekill & powdyre of precious spycez,
And pyment full plenteuous of Portyngale wynes ;
Thre balefull birdez his brochez pey *turne,*
fat byddez his bedgatt, his byddynge to wyrche ;
Siche foure scholde be fay *within* foure hourez,
Are his fylth ware fillede that his flesch zernes."
"ja, I haue broghte pe berde," *quod* he, " the bettyre me lykez ;
Forthi will I boun me, and here it my seluen ;

Bot, lefe, walde pow lere me whare pat lede lengez,
I sail alowe pe and I liffe, oure Lorde so me helpe !"
"Ferke fast to pe fyre," *quod* cho, " that flawmez so hye ;
Thare fillis pat fende hym, fraist when the lykez ;
Bot thow moste seke more southe, sydlyiigs a lyttill,
For he will hafe sent hym selfe sex myle large."
To pe sowre of pe reke he soghte at pe gayneste,
Sayned hym sekerly *with* certeyne wordez,
And sydlyiigs of pe segge the syghte had he rechidtf,
How vnsemly pat sott satt sowpande hym one.
He lay lenand on lange, lugande vnfaire,
pe thee of a manns lymme lyfte vp by pe haunche ;
His bakke, and his bewschers, and his brode lendez,
He bekez by pe bale-fyre, and breklesse hym semede;
pare ware rostez full ruyde, and rewfull bredez,
Beerynes and bestailo brochede togeders,
Cowlefull cramede of crysmede childyre,
Sum as brede brochede ; and bierdez tham towroede.
And pan this comlych kynge, bycause of his pople,
His herte bledez for bale, one bent ware he standez.
Thane he dressede one his schelde, schuntes no lengere,
Braundesche his bryghte swerde by pe bryghte hiltez,
Raykez towarde pe renke reghte *with* a ruyde will,
And hyely hailsez pat hulke *with* hawtayne wordez,—
"Now, all-weldand Gode, pat wyrscheppez vs all,
Giff the sorowe and syte, sotte, there thow lygges,
For the fulsomeste freke that fowrmede was eucre ;
Foully thow fedys the, pe fende haue thi saule!
Here es cury vnclene, carle, be my trowthe,
Caffe of creatotws all, thow curssede wriche,
Because that pow killide has pise cresmede childyre,
Thow has marters made, and broghte oute of lyfe,
fat here are brochede on bente, and brittenede *with* thi handez,
I sail merke pe thy mede, as pou has myche serfede,
Thurghe myghte of seynt Mighell, pat pis monte zemes.
And for this faire ladye, pat pow has fey leuyde,
And pus forcede one foulde, for fylth of pi selfen,
Dresse the now, dogge-sone, the deuell haue pi saule,

For pow sail dye this day, thurghe dynt of my handez."
Than glopnede pe gloton and gloredtf vnfaire,
He grennedc as a grewhonnde, *with* grysly tuskes ;
He gapede, he groned faste, *with* grucchande latez,
For grefe of pe gude kynge, pat hym *with* grame gretez.
His fax and his foretoppe was filterede togeders,
And owte of his face fome ane halfe fote large ;
His frount and his forheuede, all was it ouer,
As *pe* fell of a froske, and fraknede it semede,
Huke-nebbyde as a hawke, and a hore berde,
And herede to pe hole eyghn with hyngande browes ;
Harske as a hunde-fiseh, hardly who so lukez,
So was Jpe hyde of pat hulke hally al ouer.
Erne had he full huge, and vgly to schewe,
With eghne full horreble, and ardammt for so the ;
Flatt-mowthede as a fluke, *with* fleryandc lyppys,
And pe flesche in his fortethe fowly as a bere.
His berde was brothy and blake, pat till his brest rechede,
Grassede as a mereswyne *with* corkes full huge,
And all falterdc |pe flesche in his foule lippys,
like wrethe as a wolfe-heuede, it wraythe owtt at ones !
Bullenekkyde was pat bierne, and brade in the scholders,
Brok-brestede as a brawne, *with* brustils full large,
Ruyd armes as an ake *with* ruselede sydes,
Lyme and leskes full lothyn, leue ze for sothe :
Sehouell-fotede was *pat* schalke, and schaylaiide hym semyde,
With schankez vnschaply, schowand togedyrs ;
Thykke theese as a thursse, and thikkere in *pe* hanche,
Oreesse growen as a galte, full grylych he lukez.
"Who pe lenghe of *pe* lede lelly accouwtes,
Fro *pe* face to pe fote was fyfe fadom lange.
Thane stertez he vp sturdely on two styffe schankez,
And sone he caughte hym a clubb all of clene yryn.
He walde hafe kyllede *pe kynge with* his kene wapen,
Bot thurghe *pe* crafte of Cryste zit *pe* carle failede.
The creest and the coronall, *pe* claspes of syluer,
Clenly *with* his clubb he crasschede doune at onez.
The *kynge* castes vp his schelde, and couers hym faire,

And *with* his burlyche brande a box he hym reches ;
Full butt in pe frunt the fromonde he hittez,
That the burnyscht blade to Jpe brayne rywnez ;
He feyede his fysnamye *with* his foule hondez,
And frappez faste at hys face fersely *peraftjre.*
The kyng chaungez his fote, eschewes a lyttill,
Ne had he eschapede pat choppe, cheuede had euyll ;
He folowes in fersly, and festenesse a dynte
Hye vpe on *pe* hanche, *with* his hardo wapyn,
That he hillid *pe* swerde halfe a fote large ; 1120
The hott blode of *pe* hulke vnto pe hilte rynnez,
Ewyn into inmette the gyaunt he hyttez,
lust to *pe* genitales,[1] and jaggede pam in sondre.
Thane he romyedc and rarede, and ruydly he strykez
Full egerly at Arthurs, and on the erthe hittez
A swerde lenghe *within pe* swarthe, he swappez at ones,
That nere swounes *pe* kynge for swoughe of his dynttez.
Bot zit the kyngtf swepcrly full swythe he byswenkez,
Swappez in *with* the swerde pat it pe swange brystedde ;
Bothe *pe* guttez and the gorrc guschez owte at ones, 1130
pat all englaymez pe gresse one growide *per* he standez.
Thane he castez the clubb and the *kynge* hentez,
On *pe* creeste of *pe* cragg he caughte hym in armez,
And enclosez hym clenly, to cruschen hys rybbez ;
So hardtf haldez he pat hende, pat nere his herte brystez.
pane *pe* balefull bierdez bownez to *pe* erthe,
Kneland and cryande, and clappide feire handez,—
" Criste comforthe zone knyghte, and kepe hym fro sorowe,
And latte *neuer* zone fende fell hym o lyfe ! "
Jitt es *pe* warlow so wyghte, he welters hym vnder, 1140
Wrothely pai wrythyn and wrystill togederz,
Welters and walowes *ower within p*ase buskez,
Tumbellez and *tumes* faste, and terez paire wedez,
Vntenderly fro *pe* toppe fai tiltin togederz,
Whilom Arthure ouer, and operwhile vndyre,
Fro Jpe heghe of *pe* hyll vnto pe harde roche ;
They feyne neuer are they fall at *pe* flode merkes.

1 MS. genitates. (Brock.)

Bot Arthur *with* ane anlace egerly smyttez,
And hittez euer in the hulke vp to pe hiltez.
pe theeffe at pe dede-thrawe sothroly hym thryngez,
fat three rybbys in his syde he thrystez in sunders.
Then *sir Kayous* pe kene vnto pe kynge styrtez,—
Said, "alias ! we are lorne, my lorde es confundede,
Oucrfallen *with* a fende, vs es full hapnede !
We mon be forfetede in faith, and flemyde for euer."
pay hafe vp hys hawberke pan and handilez pervndyre,
His hyde and his haunche eke, on heghte to pe schnldrez,
His flawnke and his feletuz, and his faire sydez,
Bothe his bakke and his breste, and his bryghte armez.
pay ware fayne *pat* pey fande no flesche entamede,
And for *pat* journee made joye, pir gentill knyghttez.
"Now, certez," saise Sir Bedwere, "it semez, be my Lorde !
He sekez seyntez bot selden, *pe* sorera he grypes,
pat pus clekys this corsaiwt owte of fir heghe clyffez,
To carye forthe siche a carle at close hym in siluere.
Be Myghell, of syche a makk I hafe myche wondyre
That *euer* owre soucraygne Lorde suffers hym in heuen ;
And all seyntez be syche, pat seruez oure Lorde,
I sail neucr no seynt bee, be my fadyre sawle ! "
Thane bouralez pe bolde *kynge* at Bedvere wordez,—
"pis seynt haue I soghte, so helpe me owre Lorde !
Forthy brayd owtte pi brande, and broche hym to *pe* herte ;
Be sekere of this sergeaunt, he has me sore greuede.
I faghte noghte wyth syche a freke pis fyftene wyntyrs,
Bot in *pe* montez of Araby I mett syche *unoper* ;
He was *pe* forcyere be ferre pat had I nere funden,
Ne had my fortune bene faire, fey had I leuede.
Onone stryke of his heuede, and stake it thereaftyre,
Gife it to thy sqwyere, fore he es wele horsede ;
Bere it to *sir* Howell pat es in herde bandez,
And byd hym herte hym wele, his enmy es destruede ;
Syne bere it to Bareflete, and brace it in yryne,
And sett it on the barbycane, biernes to schewe.
My brande and my brode schelde apon pe bent lyggez,
On *pe* creeste of *pe* cragge, thare fyrste we encontrede,

And pe clubb parby, all of clene iren,
pat many Cristen has kyllyde in Constantyne landez ;
Ferke to the farlande, and fetche me pat wapen,
And late founde till onre flete, in flode pare it lengez.
If thow wyll any tresour, take whate the lykez;
Haue I thekyrtyll and pe clubb, I coueite noghte ells."
Now pey caire to pe cragge, fise comlyche knyghtez,
And broghte hym pe brade schelde, and his bryghte wapen,
pe clubb and pe cotte alls, syr Kayows hym seluen,
Aad kayres *with* [pe] conquerour, the kyngez to schewe ;
That in couerte pe kynge helde closse to hym seluen,
Whills clene day fro pe clowde clymbyd on lofte.
Be that to courte was comen clamour full huge,
And before pe comlyche kynge they knelyd all at ones,—
" "Welcom, oure liege lorde, to lang has thow duellyde,
Gouemow vndyr Gode, graytheste and noble,
To wham grace es graunted, and gyffen at his will.
Now thy comly come has comforthede vs all,
Thow has in thy realtee reuengyde thy pople.
Thurghe helpe of thy hande thyne enmyse are struyede,
That has thy renkes ouerronñe, and refte them theire childyre ;
Whas neucr rewme owte of araye so redyly releuede."
Than pe conquerour cristenly carpez to his pople,
" Thankes Gode," *quod* he, " of pis grace, and no gome ells,
For it was *neuer* mawns dede, bot myghte of Hym selfen,
Or myracle of Hys modyre, pat mylde es till all."
He somond pan pe schippemen scharpely peraftyre,
To schake furthe *with* pe schyre-men to schifte pe gudez ;
" All pe myche tresow pat tray tour had wonnen,
To comouns of the contre, clergye and oper,
Luke it be done and delte to my dere pople,
That none pleyn of theire parte, o peyne of *zour* lyfez."
He comande hys cosyn *with* knyghtlyche wordez,
To make a kyrke on pe cragg, ther the corse lengez,
And a couent therein, Criste for to serfe,
In mynde of p*at* martyre, pat in pe monte rystez.
Qwen Sir Arthur the kynge had kylled pe gyaunt,
Than blythely fro Bareflete he buskes on pe morne,

With his batell on brede, by pa blythe stremes ;
Towarde Castell Blanke he chesez hym the waye,
Thurghe a faire champayne, vndyr schalke hyllis.
The kyng fraystez a furth *oner* the fresche strandez,
Foundez with his faire folk *ouer* as hym lykez:
Fnrthe stepes that steryn and strekez his tentis
One a strenghe by a streme, in pas straytt landez.
Onone aftyre myddaye, in the mene-while,
pare comez two messangers of tha fere marchez,
Fra pe marschall of Frannce, and menskfully hym gretes,
Besoghte hym of *sucour*, and saide hym pise wordez, —
" Sir, thi marschall, pi mynistre, thy mercy besekez,
Of thy mekill mages tee, fore mendement of thi pople,
Of pise marchez-men, that thus are myskaryede,
And thus *merrede* amangtf, maugree theire eghne.
I witter pe pe *emperour* es entirde into Fraunce,
With ostes of enmyse, orrible and huge ;
Brynnez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche,
And brittenes thi baronage, that bieldez parein ;
He encrochez kenely by craftez of armez,
Countrese and castells pat to thy coroun langez ;
Confoundez thy comomis, clergy and *opper ;*
Bot thow comfurth them, *sir* kynge, *cover* sall they neuer.
He fellez forestez fele, forrayse thi landez,
Frysthez no fraunchez, bot fraisez the pople.
pus he fellez thi folke, and fangez theire gudez
Fremedly the Franche tung/j fey es belefede.
He drawes into douce Fraunce, as Duchemen tellez,
Dresside *with* his dragouns, dredfull to schewe ;
All to dede they dyghte *with* dynttys of swerddez,
Dukez and dusperes, pat dreches tharein.
Forthy the lordez of the lande, ladys and *oper*,
Prayes the for Petyr luffe, pe apostyll of Rome,
Sen thow arte presant in place, pat pow will profyre make
To pat *perilous* prynce, be processe of tym.
He ayers by *pne* hilles, zone heghe holtez vndyr,
Hufes thare *with* hale strenghe of hay then kyngez ;
Helpe nowe for His lufe, that heghe in heuen sittez,

And talke tristly to them, >at thus vs destroyes."
The *kynge* biddis sir Boice, " buske the belyfe !
Take *with* the *sir* Berill, and Bedwere the ryche,
Sir Gawayne and *sir* Gryme, these galyarde knyghtez,
And graythe zowe to *zone* grene wode, and gose on per nedes ;
Saise to syr Lucẇs, to vnlordly he wyrkez,
Thus letherly agaynes law to lede my pople ;
I lette hym or oghte lange, zif me pe lyffe happene,
Or many lyghte sail lawe, pat hym ouere lande folowes.
Comande hym kenely wyth crewell wordez,
Cayre owte of my kyngryke with his kydd knyghtez ;
In caase that he will noghte, pat cursede wreche,
Com for his curtaisie, and countere me ones.
Thane sail we rekken full rathe, whatt ryghte pat he'claymes,
Thus to ryot pis rewme and raimsone the pople ;
Thare sail it derely be delte *with* dynttez of handez :
The Dryghtten at Domesdaye dele as hym lykes."
Now thei graythe them to goo, theis galyarde knyghttez,
All gleterande in golde, appon grete stedes,
Towarde pe grene wode, pat *with* grownden wapyn,
To grete wele the grett lorde, that wolde be grefede sone.
Thise hende houez on a hill by Jpe holte eyues,
Behelde Jpe howsynge full hye of hathen kynges—
They herde in theire herbergage hundrethez full many,
Hornez of olyfantez full helych blawen—
Palaisez proudliche pyghte, pat palyd ware ryche,
Of pall and of pwrpure, wyth pwcyous stones ;
Pensels and pomell of ryche prynce armez,
Pighte in *pe* playn mede, pe pople to schewe ;
And than the Romayns so ryche had arayede their tentes,
On rawe by pe ryuere, vndyr pe round hillez,
The *emperour* for *houoicr* ewyn in the myddes,
Wyth egles al ouer ennelled so faire ;
And saw hym and pe sowdane, and senatowrs many,
Seke towarde a sale *with* sextene kyngez,
Syland softely in, swettly by them selfen,
To sowpe withe pat soumiygne full selcouthe metez.
Nowe they wende *oner* the watyre, pise wyrchipfull knyghttez,

Thnrghe pe wode to pe wone, there the wyese rystex ;
Reght as pey hade weschen, and went to pe table,
Sir Wawayne pe worthethy vnwynly he spekes,—
" The myghte & pe maiestee, fat menskes vs all,
That was merked and made thnrghe pe myghte of Hym selnen,
Gyffe jow sytte in Jow sette, Sowdane and *oper*,
That here are semblede in sale, vnsawghte mott Je worthe !
And pe fals heretyke, pat *emperour* hym callez,
That ocnpyes in erroure the empyre of Rome,
Sir Arthurs herytage, fat honourable kynge,
That all his anncestres aughte bot Vtere hym one,
That ilke cursynge fat Cayme kaghte for his brothyre,
Cleffe on fe, cukewalde, *with* croune ther thow lengez,
For the vnlordlyeste lede fat I on lukede *euer* !
My lorde meruailles hym mekyll, man, be my troivthe,
Why thow morthires his men, pat no mysse semes,
Comouns of pe countre, clergye and of oper,
pat are noghte conpable perin, ne knawes noght in armez.
Forthi the comelyche kynge, curtays and noble,
Comandez pe kenely to kaire of his landes,
Ore ells for thy knyghthede encontre hym ones;
Sen pow conettes the corouiie, latte it be declarede !
I hafe dyschargide me here, chalange whoo lykez,
Before all thy cheualrye, cheftaynes and of er.
Schape vs an ansuere, and schunte pow no lengere,
pat we may schifte at pe schorte, and schewc to my lorde."
The *emperour* ansuerde wyth austeryn wordez,
" je are w*i*th myn enmy, sir Arthurc hym seluen ;
It es non honour to me to owttray hys knyghttez,
poghe Je bee irous men, fat ayres on his nedez.
Bot say to thy soueraygne, I send hym thes wordez,
Ne ware it for rencrence of my ryche table,
pan sulde repent full rathe of pi ruyde wordez,
Siche a rebawde as powe rebuke any lordez,
Wyth theire retenuz arrayede, full reall & noble !
Here will I suggowme, whills me lefe thynkes,
And sythen seke in by Sayne *with* solace peraftere;
Ensegge all pa cetese be pe salte strandez,

And aeyn ryde in by Rone, pat rynnez so faire,
And of all his ryche castells rasche doun pe wallez ;
I sail noghte lefe in Paresche, by processe of tyme,
His parte of a pechelyne, proue when hym lykes."
"Now, certez," sais sir Wawayne, "myche wondyre haue I,
pat syche an alfyn as thow dare speke syche wordez !
I had leuer then all Fraunce, that heuede es of rewmes,
Fyghte *with* the faythefully on felde be oure one."
Thane answers *sir Gayous* full gobbede wordes,—
Was erne to *pe emperour,* and erle hym selfen,—
" Euere ware pes Bretoims braggers of olde !
Loo ! how he brawles hym for hys bryghte wedes,
As he myghte bryttyn vs all wit*h* his brande ryche !
zitt he berkes myche boste, zone boy *peve* he standes! "
Than greuyde *sir* Gawayne at his grett wordes,
Graythes towarde *pe* gome *with* grucchande herte ;
With hys stelyn brande he strykes of hys heuede,
And sterttes owtte to hys stede, and *with* his stale wendes.
Thurghe pe wacches Jpey wente, thes wirchipfull knyghtez,
And fyndez in theire farewaye wondyrlyche many ;
Ouer pe watyre pey wente by wyghtnesse of horses,
And tuke wynde as *pey* walde by *pe* wodde hewmes.
Thane folous frekly one fote frekkes ynewe,
And of *pe* Romayns arrayed appon ryche stedes, .
Chasede thurghe a champayne oure cheualroiw knyghtez,
Till a cheefe forest, on schalke whitte horses.
Bot a freke all in fyne golde, and fretted in sable,
Come forpermnaste on a freson, in flawmande wedes ;
A faire floreschte spere in fewtyre he castes,
And folowes faste on owre folke, and freschelye ascryez.
Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude appone a graye stede,
He gryppes hym a grete spere, and graythely hym hittez ;
Thurghe *pe* guttez into *pe* gorre he gyrdes hym ewyn,
That the grounden stele glydez to his herte.
The gome and pe grette horse at *pe* grounde lyggez,
Full gryselyche gronande, for grofe of his woundez.
pane presez a preker in, full proudely arayede,
That beres all of powrpowr, palyde *with syluer* :

Byggly on a broune stede he prefers full large.
He was a paynyme of Perse pat pus hym persuede.
Sir Boys vnabaiste all he buskes hym agaynes,
With a bustous launce he berez hym thurghe,
pat pe breme and *pe* brade schelde appon pe bente lyggez,
And he bryngez furthe the blade, & bownez to his felowez.
Thane *sir* Feltemow of myghte, a man mekyll praysede,
Was niouede on his manere, and manacede full faste ;
He graythes to sir Gawayne graythely to wyrche,
For grefe of *sir Gayous, p*at es on grounde leuede.
Than *sir* Gawayne was glade; agayne hym he rydez,
Wyth Galuth his gude swerde graythely hym hyttez ;
The knyghte on pe cowrsere he cleuede in sondyre ;
Clenlyche fro pe croune his corse he dyuysyde,
And pus he killez pe knyghte wit*h* his kydd wapen.
Than a ryche man of Rome relyede to his byerns,—
" It sail repent vs full sore and we ryde forthire ;
zone are bold bosturs, pat syche bale wyrkez ;
It befell hym full foule, pat pam so fyrste namede."
Thane pe riche Romayns r*etournes* faire brydills
To faire tentis in tene, telles theire lordez
How sir Marschalle de Mowne es on pe monte lefede,
Forejustyde at that jowroee, for his grett japez.
Bot thare chasez on oure men cheuallrous knyghtez,
Fyfe thosande folke appon faire stedes,
Faste to a foreste *oner* a fell watyr,
That flllez fro pe falow see fyfty my le large.
Thare ware Bretons enbuschide, and banarettez noble,
Of pe cheualrye cheefe of pe kyngez chambyre,
Seese them chase oure men, and changen peire horsez,
And choppe doun cheftaynes, that they moste chargyde.
Thane pe enbuschement of Bretons brake owte at ones,
Brothely at banere, and Bedwyne knyghtez,
Arrestede of *pe* Romayns, pat by Jpe fyrthe rydez,
All pe realeste renkes fat to Rome lengez ;
Thay iche on Jpe enmyse and egerly strykkys,
Erles of Inglande, and " Arthure ! " ascryes.
Thrughe brenes and bryghte scheldez, brestez they thyrle,

Bretons of the boldeste with theire bryghte swerdez.
Thare was Romayns oucrredyn, and niydly wondyde,
Arrestede as rebawdez, with ryotows knyghttez.
The Romaynes owte of araye remouede at ones,
And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys.
To pe senatowr Petyr a sandes-mane es commyn,
And saide, "sir, sekyrly, *pur* seggez are supprysside."
Than ten thowsande men he semblede at ones,
And sett sodanly on oure seggez, by pe salte strandez.
Than ware Bretons abaiste, and greuede a lyttill,
Bot zit the banerettez bolde, and bachellers noble,
Brekes that baitailles *with* brestez of stedes.
Sir Boice and his bolde men myche bale wyrkes ;
The Romaynes redyes pan, arrayez pam better,
And al toruscheez oure men withe theire ryste horsez,
Arestede of the richeste of pe rounde table,
Ouerrydez oure rerewarde, and grette rewthe wyrkes.
Thane the Bretons on pe bente habyddez no lengere,
Bot fleede to pe foreste, and the feelde leuede ;
Sir Beryll es born down and *sir* Boice taken,
The beste of oure bolde men vnblythely wondyde.
Bot zitt oure stale on a strenghe stotais a lyttill,
All tostonayede *with* pe stokes[1] of pa steiyn knyghtez,
Made sorowe fore theire soueraygne, pat so pare was nomen,
Besoughte Gode of socure, sende whene hym lykyde.
Than commez *sir* Idrus, armede vp at all ryghttez,
Wyth fyne hundrethe men appon faire stedes,
Fraynez faste at oure folke freschely pareaftyre,
zif *per* frendez ware ferre, pat on Jpe felde foundide.
Thane sais *sir* Gawayne, " so me God helpe !
We hafe bene chased to daye, and chullede as hares,
Rebuyked *with* Romaynes appon peire ryche stedez,
And we lurkede vndyr lee as lowrande wreches.
I luke neuer on my lorde pe dayes of my lyfe,
And we so lytherly hym helpe, pat hym so wele lykede."
Thane the Bretons brothely brochez theire stedez,
And boldly in batell appon Jpe bent rydes ;

[1] ? strokes. (Brock.)

All pe ferse men before frekly ascryes,
Ferkand in pe foreste, to freschen pam selfen.
The Romaynes than redyly arrayes them bettyre,
On rawe on a rowm felde, reghttez theire wapyns,
By the ryche reuare, and rewles pe pople ;
And with reddow sir Boice es in areste halden.
Now thei semblede vnsaughte by pe salte strandez ;
Saddly theis sekere menn settys peire dynttez,
With lufly launcez on lofte they luyschen togedyres,
In lorayne so lordlye on leppande stedes. 1460
Thare ware gomes thurghegirde *with* grundyn wapyns,
Grisely gayspande *with* grucchande lotes,
Grete lordes of Greke greffede so hye ;
Swyftly with swerdes they swappen thereaftyre,
Swappez doun full sweperlye swelltande knyghtez,[1]
That all swellttez one swarthe, that they ouerswyngen,
So many sweys in swoghe swounande att ones.
Syr Gaweayne the gracyous, full graythelye he wyrkkes,
The gretteste he gretez wyth gryeslye wondes ;
Wyth Galuth he gyrdez doun full galyarde knyghtez, 1470
Fore greefe of *pe* grett lorde, so grymlye he strykez.
He rydez furthe ryallye and redely thereaftyre,
Thare this reall renke was in areste halden ;
He ryfez *pe* raunke stele, he ryghttez peire brenez,
And refte them the ryche man, and rade to his strenghes.
The senator Peter thane persewede hym aftyre,
Thurghe pe presse of pe pople, wyth his pryce knyghttes ;
Appertly fore pe prysonere proues his strenghes,
Wyth prekers the proudeste that to *pe* presse lengez ;
Wrothely on the wrange hande *sir* Gawayne he strykkes, 1480
Wyth a wapen of were vnwynnly hym hittez,
The breny one pe bakhalfe ho brystez in sondyre ;
Bot zit he broghte forthe *sir* Boyce, for all peire bale biernez.
Thane *pe* Bretons boldely braggen peire tromppez,
And fore blysse of sir Boyce was broghte owtte of bandez
Boldely in batell they bere doun knyghtes,
With brandes of broun stele *pey* brettened maylez ;

[1] MS. knynghtez. (Brock.)

pay stekede stedys in stoure *with* stelen wapyns,
And all stewede wyth strenghe, *pat* stode *pern* agaynes.
Sir Idrus fitz Ewayn pan " Arthurs !" ascryeez,
Assemblez on *pe* senatow wyth sextene knyghttez,
Of *pe* sekereste men *pat* to oure syde lengede.
Sodanly in a soppe they sett in att ones,
Foynes faste att *pe* fore breste *with* flawmande swerdez,
And feghttes faste att *pe* fronte freschely pareaftyre ;
Felles fele on *pe* felde appon *pe* ferrere syde,
Fey on *pe* faire felde by pa fresche strandez.
Bot *air* Idrus fytz Ewayn anters hym seluen,
And enters in anly, and egyrly strykez,
Sekez to *pe* senatowr and sesez his brydill;
Vnsaughtely he saide hym pese sittande wordez,—
" Jelde *pe, sir,* japely, zife *pon p*i lyfe jernez,
Fore gyftez pat pow gyffe may, pou zeme now *pe* selfen ;
Fore dredlez dreche pow, or droppe any wylez,
Thow sail dy *pis* daye thorowe dyntt of my handez."
" I ascente," *quod pe* senator, "so me Criste helpe '
So *pat* I be safe broghte before *pe* kynge seluen ;
Kaunson me resonabillye, as I may ouerreche,
Aftyro my renttez in Rome may redyly forthire."
Thane answers *sir* Idrus with austeryn wordez,
"Thow sail hafe condycyon, as *pe kynge* lykes,
When thow comes to *pe* kyth there the cowrte haldez ;
In caase his concell bee to kepe the no langere,
To be killyde at his commandment his knyghttez before."
pay ledde hym furthe in *pe* rowte, and lached ofe his wedes,
Lefte hym wyth Lyonell and Lowell hys brothire.
0 lawe in *pe* launde pane, by *pe* lythe strandez,
Sir Luciws lygge-men loste are fore euer ;
The senatowr Peter es prysoner takyn,
Of Perce and of Porte Iaffe full many price knyghtez,
And myche pople wyth all perischede pam selfen.
For presse of *pe* passage, they plungede[1] at onez.
Thare myghte men see Romaynez rewfully wondyde,
Ouerredyn *with* renkes of the round table.

[1] MS. *rtpeats* they plungede. (Brock.)

In pe raike of pe furthe they righten peire brenys,
pat rane all on reede blode redylye all ouer;
They raughte in pe rerewarde full *ryotous* knyghtez,
For rauwsone[1] of rede golde and reall stedys ;
Radly relayes, and restez theire horsez,
In rowtte to pe ryche kynge they rade al at onez.
A knyghte cayrez before, and to pe kynge telles,—
" Sir, here commez thy messangerez -*with* myrthez fro pe moimtez,
pay hafe bene machede todaye *with* men of *pe* marchez,
Foremaglede in pe marras *with* meruailows knyghtez.
We hafe foughten in faithe, by zone fresche strandez,
With pe frekkeste folke that to pi foo langez;
Fyfty thosaunde on felde of ferse men of armez,
Wythin a furlange of waye, fay ere bylefede.
We hafe eschewede pis chekke, thurghe chance of oure Lorde,
Of tha cheualroius men that chargede thy pople.
The cheefe chaunchelere of Rome, a cheftayne full noble,
Will aske p*e* chartyre of pesse for charitee hym selfen ;
And the senatoiw Petire to presoner es takyn.
Of Perse and of Porte Iaffe paynymmez ynewe
Cowmez prekande in the presse, *with* thy prysse knyghttez,
With pouerte in thi preson theire paynez to drye.
I beseke zow, sir, say whate zowe lykes,
Whethire ze suffyre them saughte, or sone delyuerde.
ze may haue fore pe senator sextie horse chargede
Of *sillier* be Seterdaye, full sekyrly payede,
And for p*e* cheefe chauncelere, pe cheualere noble,
Charottez chokkefull charegyde *with* golde ;
The remenawnt of p*e* Bomaynez be in areste halden,
Till thiere renttez in Borne be rightewissly knawen.
I beseke zow, sir, certyfye zone lordez,
zif ze will send pam *oner pe* see, or kepe pam *pur* selfen.
All Jowr sekyre men, for sothe, sounde are byleuyde,
Saue *sir* Ewayne fytz Henry es in pe side wonddede."
" Crist be thankyde," *quod* the kynge, "and hys clere modyre,
That zowe comforthedtf and helpede be crafte of hym selfen ;
Skilfull skomfyture he skiftez as hym lykez,

[1] MS. rainsone.

Is none so skathlye may skape, ne skewe fro his handez ;
Desteny and doughtynes of dedys of armes,
All es demyd and delte at Dryghtynez will;
I kwn the thanke for thy come, it comforts vs all.
Sir knyghte," sais pe conqueixwr, "some Criste helpe !
I zif the for thy thyzandez Tolouse pe riche,
The toll and pe tachementez, tauemez and *oper,*
pe town and pe tenementez *with* towrez so hye,
That towchez to pe temporaltee, whills my tym lastez.
Bot say to Je senator I sende hym pes wordez,
Thare sail no sillier hym saue, bot *[sir]* Ewayn recouere ;
I had leuer see hym synke on the salte strandez,
Than the seegge ware seke, pat es so sore woimdede ;
I sail disseuere that sorte, so me Criste helpe,
And sett them full solytarie, in sere kyngez landez :
Sail he *never* sownde see his seynowres in Rome,
Ne sitt in pe assemble, in syghte wyth his feris.
For it comes to no kynge, pat conquerowr es holden,
To comon with his captifis fore couatys of siluer:
It come neucr of knyghthede, knawe it zif hym lyke,
To carpe of coseri, when captyfis ere takyn ;
It aughte to no prisoners to prese no lordez,
"*Ne* come in prcsens of pryncez, whene partyes are mouede.
Comaunde zone constable, pe castell pat zemes,
That he be clenlyche kepede, and in close halden ;
He sail haue maundement tomorne or myddaye be roungen,
To what marche pay sail merke, *with* maugere to lengen."
pay comiaye this captyfe with clene men of armez,
And kend hym to pe constable, alls pe kynge byddez ;
And seyn to Arthure pey ayre, and egerly hym towchez
The answere of pe *emperour,* irows of dedez.
Thane sir Arthure, on erthe atheliste of opere,
At euen at his a wen borde auantid his lordez,—
"Me aughte to *honour* them in erthe oucr all *oper* thyngez,
pat pus in myn absens awnters pem selfen ;
I sail them luffe whylez I lyffe, so me our Lorde helpe !
And gyfe pem landys full large, whare them beste lykes ;
They sail noghte losse, on pis layke, zif me lyfe happen,

pat pus are lamede for my lufe be pis lythe strandez." 1600
Bot in pe clere daweyng, pe dere kynge hym selfen
Comaundyd *sir* Cadore *with* his dere knyghttes,
Sir Cleremws, sir Cleremonde, *with* clene men of armez,
Sir Clowdnwr, *sir* Clegis, to conuaye theis lordez ;
Sir Boyce and sir Berell *with* baners displayede,
Sir Bawdwyne, *sir* Bryane, and *sir* Bed were pe ryche,
Sir Raynalde and *sir R*ichere, Rawlaunde childyre,
To ryde *with* fe Romaynes in rowtte wyth theire feres.
" Prekez now preualye to Parys the ryche,
Wyth Petir the pryssonere and his price knyghttez ; 1610
Beteche pam p*e* proueste, in presens of lordez,
0 payne and o perell pat pendes theretoo,
That they be weisely wachede and in warde holden,
Wardede of warantizez *with* wyrchipfull knyghttez ;
Wagge hym wyghte men, and woonde for no siluyre ;
I haffe warnede p*at* wy, be ware zife hym lykes ! "
Now bownes pe Bretons, als pe kynge byddez,
Buskez theire batells, theire baners displayez ;
Towardez Chartris they chese, thes cheualrows knyghttez,
And in the champayne lande full faire pay eschewede : 1620
For pe emperour of myghte had ordande hym selfen
Sir Vtolfe and sir Ewandyre, two honourable kyngez,
Erles of pe Orients, with austeryn knyghttez,
Of pe awntrouseste men p*at* to his oste lengede,
Sir Sextynowr of Lyby and senatowrs many,
The kynge of Surrye hym selfe *with* Sarzynes ynowe,
The senatowr of Sutere wyth sowmes full huge,
Whas assygnede to pat courte be sent of his peres,
Traise towarde Troys pe treson[1] to wyrke,
To hafe betrappede with a trayne oure trauelande knyghttez, 1630
That hade persayfede pat Peter at Parys sulde lenge,
In presonwe with pe prouoste, his paynez to drye.
Forthi they buskede them bownn with baners displayede,
In the buskayle of his waye, on blonkkes full hugge ;
Planttez them in the pathe with powere arrayede,
To pyke up pe presoners fro oure pryse knyghttez.

[1] MS. pe treson the treson. (Brock.)

Syr Cadore of Cornewalle comanndez his peris,
Sir Clegis, sir Cleremws, *sir* Cleremownnde pe noble ;
" Here es pe close of Clyme with clewes so hye ;
Lokez the contree be clere, the corners are large ;
Discoueres now sekerly skrogges and oper,
That no skathell in pe skroggez skorne vs hereaftyre ;
Loke ze skyfte it so pat vs no skathe lympe,
For na skomfitoure in skoulkery is skomfite euer."
Now pey hye to pe holte, thes harageous knyghttez,
To herken of pe hye men to helpen theis lordes ;
Fyndez them helmede hole and horsesyde on stedys,
Houande on pe hye waye by pe holte hemmes.
With knyghttly contenatmce Sir Clegis hym selfen
Kryes to p*e* companye, and carpes thees wordez,—
" Es there any kyde knyghte, kaysere or oper,
Will kyth for his kyngc lufe craftes of armes ?
We are comen fro pe kyng of pis lythe[1] ryche,
That knawen es for conquerow, corownde in erthe,
His ryche retenuz here all of his round table,
To ryde with fat reall in rowtt where hym lykes;
We seke justynge of werre, zif any will happyn,
Of pe jolyeste men ajuggede be lordes ;
If here be any hathell man, erle or *oper*,
That for pe *emperour* lufe will awntere hym selfen."
And ane erle pane in angers answeres hym son,—
" Me angers at Arthure, and att his hathell bierns,
That thus in his errowr ocupyes theis rewmes ;
And owtrayes pe emperow, his erthely lorde.
The araye and pe ryalltez of pe rounde table
Es wyth *ronkour* rehersede in rewmes full many ;
Of oure renttez of Rome syche reuell he haldys,
He sail zife resoun full rathe, zif vs reghte happen,
That many sail repente that in his rowtte rydez,
For the reklesse roy so rewlez hym selfen."
" A! " sais sir Clegis pan, "some Criste helpe !
I knawe be thi carpynge a cowntere pe semes,
Bot be pon auditowre, or erle, or emperour thi selfen,

[1] *Read* kythe.

Appon Arthurez byhalue I answere the sone.
The renke so reall, pat rewllez vs all,
The ryotows men and pe ryche of pe rounde table,
He has araysede his accownte, and redde all his rollez,
For he wyll gyfe a rekenyng that rewe sail aftyre,
That all pe ryche sail repefite pat to Rome langez,
Or þe rereage be requit[1] of rentez pat he clayniez.
We crafe of *zour* curtaisie three coursez of werre,
And claymez of knyghthode, take kepe to zour selfen!
ze do bott trayne vs to daye wyth trofelande wordez,
Of syche trauaylande men trecherye me thynkes.
Sende owte sadly certayne knyghttez,
Or say me sekerly sothe, forsake zif zowe lykes."
Pane sais pe kynge of Surry, "Alls saue me oure Lorde
zif pow hufe all pe daye, pou bees noghte delyuerede,
Bot thow sekerly ensure with certeyne knyghtez,
pat *pi* cote and thi breste be knawen *with* lordez,
Of armes of ancestrye, entyrde *with* londez."
"Sir kyng," sais *sir* Clegys, "full knyghttly pow askez :
I trowe it be for cowardys thow carpes thes wordez.
Myn armez are of ancestrye enueryde with lordez,
And has in banere bene borne sen *sir* Brut tyme ;
At the cité of Troye *pat* tymme was ensegede,
Ofte seen in asawtte with certayne knyghttez,
Fro þe Borghte broghte vs and all oure bolde elders,
To Bretayne pe braddere, within chippe-burdez."
"Sir," sais *sir* Sextenow, "saye what þe lykez,
And we sail suffyre the, als vs beste semes ;
Luke thi troumppez be trussede, and trofull no lengere,
For poghe pou tarye all pe daye, the tyddes no bettyr ;
For there sail *neuer* Romayne, pat in my rowtt rydez,
Be *with* rebawdez rebuykyde, whills I in werlde regne."
Thane *sir* Clegis to pe *kynge* a lyttill enclinede,
Kayres to *sir* Cadore, and knyghtly hym tellez,—
"We hafe founden in zone firthe, floreschede with leues,
pe *flour* of pe faireste folke pat to pi foo langez,
Fifty thosandez of folke of ferse men of armez,

[1] *Looks like* requiter *in* MS. (Brock.)

pat faire are fewteride on frounte vndyr jone fre bowes.
They are enbnschede on blonkkes, with baners displayede,
In zone bechen wode appon the waye sydes.
Thay hafe the fur the forsette all of Jpe faire watyre,
That fayfully of force feghte vs byhowys ;
For thus vs schappes to daye, schortly to tell,
Whedyre we schone or schewe, schyft[1] as pe lykes."
"Nay," *quod* Cador, "some Criste helpe !
It ware schame p*at* we scholde schone for so lytyll;
Sir Lancelott sail *neuer* laughe, p*at with* fe kyng lengez,
That I sulde lette my waye for lede appon erthe.
I sail be dede and vndone ar I here dreche,
For drede of any doggeson in zone dym schawes."
Syr Cador thane knyghtly comforthes his pople,
And with corage kene he karpes pes wordes,—
"Thynk on pe valyaunt prynce pat vesettez vs *eucr,*
With landez and lordcheppez, whare vs boste lykes ;
That has vs ducheres delte, and dubbyde vs knyghttez,
Gifen vs gersoms and golde, and gardwynes many,
Grewhoundez and grett horse, and alkyn gamnes,
That gaynez till any gome, that vndyre God leuez ;
Thynke on riche renoun of pe rounde table,
And late it neuer be refte vs fore Romayne in erthe ;
Feyne zow noghte feyntly, ne frythes no wapyns,
Bot luke ze fyghte faythefully, frekes z*our* selfen ;
I walde be welly de all qwyke, and quarterde in sondre,
Bot I wyrke my dede, whils I in wrethe lenge."
Than this doughtty duke dubbyd his knyghttez,
Ioneke and Askanere, Aladuke and oper,
That ayarez were of Esexe, and all pase este marchez ;
Howell and Hardelfe, happy in armez,
Sir Heryll and sir Herygall, pise harageouse knyghttez.
Than the souerayn assignede certayne lordez,
Sir Wawayne, *sir* Vryell, sir Bedwere pe ryche,
Raynallde and Richeere, and Rowlandez childyre,—
"Takez kepe on this prynce *with* zoure price knyghtez,
And zife we in pe stowr withstonden the better,

1 MS. *appears to read* schyst.

Standez here in this stede, and stirrez no forthire ;
And zif pe chaunce fall pat we bee ouercharggede,
Eschewes to som castell, and chewyse *zour* selfen ;
Or ryde to pe riche kyngc zif zow roo happyn,
And bidde hym com redily to rescewe hys biernez."
And than the Bretons brothely enbrassez peire scheldez,
Braydez one bacenetez, and buskes theire launcez.
Thus he fittez his folke, and to pe felde rydez,
Fif hundreth on a frounte fewtrede at onez.
With trompes pay trine, and trappede stedes,
With cornettes and clarions, and clergiall notes ;
Schokkes in *with* a schakke, and schontez no langere,
There schawes ware scheen vndyr Jpe schire eyuez.
And thane the Romaynez rowtte remowes a lyttill,
Raykes *with* a rerewarde pas reall knyghttez ;
So raply pay ryde thare, that all pe rowte ryngez,
Of ryues and raunke stele, and ryche golde maylez.
Thane schotte owtte of pe schawe schiltrounis many,
With scharpe wapywns of were schotande at ones :
The kynge of Lebe before the wawarde he ledez,
And all his lele ligemen 0 laundon ascriez.
Thane this cruell *kjnge* castis in fewtire,
Kaghte hym a *couerde* horse, and his course haldez,
Beris to *sir* Berill, and brathely hym hittes,
Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne.
The gome and pe grette horse at Jpe grounde liggez,
And gretez graythely to Gode, and gyffes hym pe saule.
Thus es Berell the bolde broghte owtte of lyue,
And byddez aftyre beryell, pat hym beste lykez.
And thane *sir* Cador of Cornewayle es carefull in herte,
Because of his kynyse-mane, pat pus es myscaryede ;
Vmbeclappes the cors, and kyssez hym ofte,
Gerte kepe hym coucrte *with* his clere knyghttez.
Thane laughes the Lebe kynge, and all on lowde meles,—
" Jone lorde es lyghttede, me lykes the bettyre !
He sail noghte dere vs to daye, the deuyll haue [his] bones !"
" zone kynge," said Cador, " karpes full large,
Because he killyd Jris kene ; Criste hafe pi saule!

He sail hafe corne bote, so me Criste helpe !
Or I kaire of pis coste, we sail encontre ones ;
So may pe wynde weile tumne, I quytte hym or ewyn,
Sothely hym selfen, or summ of his ferez."
Thane *sir* Cador pe kene, knyghttly he wyrkez,
Cryez, "A Come wale," and castez in fewtere,
Girdez streke thourghe pe stowr on a stede ryche ;
Many steryn mane he steride by strenghe of hym on.
Whene his spere was sprongen, he spede hym full zerne,
Swappede owtte *with* a swerde, that swykede hym neuer,
Wroghte wayes full wyde, and wounded knyghttez ;
Wyrkez his in wayfare, full werkand sydez,
And hewes of pe hardieste halsez in sondyre,
That all blendez with blode thare his blanke rynnez.
So many biernez the bolde broughte owt of lyfe,
Tittez tirauntez doun, and ternez[1] theire sadills,
And *turnez* owte of pe toile, when hym tyme thynkkez.
Thane the Lebe kynge criez full lowde
One *sir* Cador the kene, *with* cruell wordez,
" Thowe hase wyrchipe wonne, and wondyde knyghttez !
Thowe wenes fore thi wightenez the werlde es thy nowen.
I sail wayte at thyne houwde, wy, be my trowthe !
I haue warnede *pe* wele, be ware zif the lykez ! "
With cornuse and elariones peis newe made knyghttez
Lythes vnto Jpe crye, and castez in few tire;
Ferkes in on a frounte one feraunte stedez,
Fellede at pe fyrste come fyfty att ones,
Schotte thorowe the schiltrouras, and scheuerede launcez,
Laid doun in *pe* lumppe lordly biernez.
And thus nobilly oure newe men notez peire strenghez :
Bot new notte es onon pat noyes me sore.
The kynge of Lebe has laughte a stede pat hym lykede,
And comes in lordely in lyonez of siluere,
Vmbelappez pe lumpe, and lattes in sondre ;
Many lede with his launce Jpe liffe has he refede.
Thus he chaces pe childire of pe kyngez chambire,
And killez in pe champanyse cheualrous knyghttez,

[1] MS. *repeats* and temez. (Brock.)

With a chasynge spere he choppes doun many.
There was *sir* Alyduke slayne, and Achinowr wondyde,
Sir Origge and sir Ennyngall hewen al to pecez ;
And ther was Lewlyn laughte, and Lewlyns brothire,
With lordez of Lebe, and lede to peire strenghez :
Ne hade *sir* Clegis comen, and Clemente Jpe noble,
Oure newe men hade gone to noghte, and many ma oJper.
Pane sir Cador *pe* kene castez in fewtire
" A cruell launce and a kene, and to pe kynge rydez,
Hittez hym heghe on pe helme *with* his harde wapen,
That all pe hotte blode of hym to his hande rynnez.
The hethen harageous kynge appon pe hethe lyggez,
And of his hertly hurte helyde he neuer.
Thane *sir* Cador pe kene cryez full lowde,—
"Thow has corne botte, *sir* kyngg, pare God gyfe pe sorowe,
Thow killyde my cosyn, my kare es the losae.
Kele the nowe in the claye, and comforthe thi selfen!
Thow skornede vs lang ere *with* thi skornefull wordez,
And nowe has pow cheuede soo ; it es thyn a wen skathe !
Holde at pow hente has, it harmez bot lyttile,
For hethynge es hame-holde, vse it who so will."
The kyng of Surry pan es sorowfull in herte,
For sake of this souerayiige, pat pus was supprissede ;
Semblede his Sarazenes, and senatowrs manye :
Vnsaughtyly pey sette thane appon oure sere knyghttez.
Sir Cador of Cornewaile, he cownterez them sone,
With his kydde companye cleulyche arrayede ;
In the frount of pe fyrthe, as pe waye forthis,
Fyfty thosande of folke was fellide at ones.
Thare was at *pe* assemble certayne knyghttez,
Sore wondede sone appone sere halfes ;
The sekereste Sarzanez that to pat sorte lengede,
Behynde the sadylls ware sette sex fotte large ;
They scherde in the schiltrone scheldyde knyghttez,
Schalkes they schotte thrughe schrenkande maylez,
Thurghe brenys browden brestez they thirllede,
Brasers burnyste bristez in sondyre ;
Blaaons blode and blankes they hewen,

With brandez of browne stele brankkand stedez.
The Bretonea brothely brittenez so many,
The bente and pe brode felde all on blode rynnys.
Be thane *air* Cayous pe kene a capitayne has wonnen;
Sir Clegis clynges in and clekes *emoper,*
The capitayne of Cordewa, vndire *pe* kynge self en,
That was keye of pe kythe of all *pat* coste ryche ;
Ytolfe and Ewandre Ioneke had nommen,
With *pe* erle of Affryke and *oper* grette lordes.
The *kynge* of Surry the kene to *air* Cador es Jelden,[1] 1870
pe synechall of *Sotere* to Segramoure hym selfen.
When *pe* cheualrye saw theire cheftanes were nowimen,
To a cheefe foreste they chesen theire wayes,
And felede them so feynte, they fall in *pe* greues,
In the ferynwe of *pe* fyrthe, fore ferde of oure pople.
Thare myght men see the ryche ryde in the schawes,
To rype vpe the Romaynez ruydlyche wondyde,
Schowttes aftyre men, harageous knyghttez,
Be hunndrethez they hewede doun be pe holte eyuys.
Thus oure cheualroiw men chasez *pe* pople, 1880
To a castell they eschewede a fewe *pat* eschappede.
Thane relyez *pe* renkez of Jpe roundo table,
For to ryotte *pe* wode, *per pe* duke restez ;
Ransakes the ryndez all, raughte vp theire feres,
That in pe fightynge before fay ware byleuyde.
Sir Cador garte chare theym, and couere them faire,
Kariede them to pe kynge with his beste knyghttez ;
And passez vnto Paresche with prisoners hym selfen,
Betoke theym the proueste, pryncez and *oper ;*
Tase a sope in the toure, and taryez no langere, 1890
Bot *toumea* tytte to *pe* knyge, and hym wyth tunge telles.
"Syr," sais str Cador, "a caas es befallen ;
We hafe cownteredo to day, in zone coste ryche
With kyngez and kayseres, krouell and noble,
And knyghtes and kene men clenlych arayede.
Thay hade at zone foreste forsette vs *pe* wayes,
At the furthe in *pe* fyrthe, with ferse men of armes ;

[1] ? Jolden. (Brock.)

Thare faughtte we in faythe, and foynede with sperys,
One felde with thy foo-men, and fellyd them on lyfe.
The kynge of Lebe es laide, and in *pe* felde leuyde,
And manye of his lege men pat fare to hym langede,
Oper lordez are langhte of vncouthe ledes ;
We hafe lede them at leuge, to lyf whilles *pe* lykez.
Sir Vtere and *sir* Ewaynedyrg, theis honourable knyghttez,
Be a nawntere of armes Ioneke has nommen,
With erlez of *pe* Oryentte, austeren knyghttez,
Of awncestrye *pe* beste men pat to *pe* oste langede ;
The senatowr Barouns es kaughte with a knyghtte,
The capitayne of Cornette, that ere well es halden,
The syneschall of Suterc vnsaughte wyth *pes oper,*
The kynge of Surry hym selfen, and Sarazenes.
Bot fay of ours in *pe* felde a fourtene knyghttez,
I will noghte feyne ne forbere, bot faythfully tellen ;
Sir Berell es one, a bancrette noble,
Was killyde at *pe* fyrste come *with* a kynge lyche ;
Sir Alidoyke of Towell, *with* his tende knyghtez,
Emange *pe* Turkys was tynte, and in tym fonden ;
Gude sir Mawrell of Mauwcez, and Mawren his *hroper,*
Sir Meneduke of Mentoche, *with* meruailous knyghttez."
Thane the worthy kyngtf wrythes, and wepede *with* his eughne,
Karpes to his cosyn *sir* Cador theis wordez,—
" Sir Cador, thi corage confundez vs all!
Kowardely thow castez owtte all my beste knyghttez ;
To putte men in penile, it es no pryce holden,
Bot *pe* partyes ware pwmayede, and powere arayede ;
When they ware stade on a strenghe, *pou* sulde hafe withstonden,
Bot zif thowe wolde all my steryn stroye for *pe* nonys."
" Sir," sais *sir* Cador, " ze knowe wele *pior* selfen,
je are kynge in pis kythe, karpe whatte zow lykys,
Sail *never* vpbrayde me, pat to pi burde langes,
That I sulde blyn fore theire boste, thi byddyngc to wyrche ;
When any stirttez to stale, stuffe pam pe bettere,
Ore thei will be stonayede, and stroyede in zone stray te londez.
I dide my delygens to daye, I doo me one lordez,
And in daungere of dede fore *dyaerse* knyghttez,

I hafe no grace to pi gree, bot syche grett wordez ;
zif I heuen my herte, my hape es no bettyre."
zofe *sir* Arthure ware angerde, he ansuers faire,
" Thow has doughttily donn, sir duke, *with* thi handez,
And has donn thy deuer with my dere knyghttez ;
Forthy thow arte demyde, *with* dukes and erlez,
For one of Jpe doughtyeste pat dubbede was euer,
Thare es non ischewe of vs, on this erthe sprongen ;
Thow arte apparant to be ayere, are one of thi childyre ;
Thow arte my sister sone, forsake sail I neuer."
Thane gerte he in his awen tente a table be sette,
And tryede in *with* tromppez trauaillede biernez,
Serfede them solempnely *with* selkouthe metez,
Swythe semly in syghte with sylueren dischees.
Whene the senators harde say pat it so happenede,
They saide to pe emperowr, " thi seggez are suppryssede,
Sir Arthure, thyn enmy has owterayede pi lordez,
That rode for pe rescowe of zone riche knyghttez.
Thow dosse bot tynnez *pi* tym, and turmenttez *pi* pople,
Thow arte betrayede of *pi* men, that moste thow ontraystede :
That schall turne the to tene and torfere for euer."
Than the *emperour* irus was angerde at his herte,
For oure valyant biernez siche prowesche had wonnen.
With kyng and with kaysere to consayle they wende,
Soueraygez of Sarazenez, and senatowrs manye.
Thus he semblez full sone certayne lordez,
And in the assemble thane he sais them theis wordez,—
" My herte sothely es sette, assente zif jowe lykes,
To seke into Sexon, *with* my sekyre knyghttez,
To fyghte with my foo-men, if fortune me happen,
zif I may fynde the freke *within* the four haluez ;
Or entire into Awguste awnters to seke,
And byde with my balde men *within pe* burghe ryche ;
Riste vs and reuell, and ryotte oure selfen,
Lende pare in delytte in lordechippez ynewe,
To sir Leo be comen *with* all his lele knyghtez,
With lordez of Lumberdye, to lette hym pe wayes."

Bot owre wyese kyng es warre to waytten his renkes,
And wyesly by pe woddez voydez his oste ;
Gerte felschen his fyrez, flawmande full heghe,
Trussen full traystely, and treunt thereaftyre.
Sepen into Sessoyne, he soughte at the gayneste,
And at the surs of fe sonne disseucrez his knyghttez:
Forsette them the cite appon sere halfez,
Sodaynly on iche halfe, with seuen grett stales.
Anely in the vale a vawewarde enbusches ;
Sir Valyant of Vyleris, with valyant knyghttez,
Before pe kyngez visage made siche avowez,
To venquyse by victorie the vescownte of Rome.
Forthi the kynge chargez hym, what chaunce so befall,
Cheftayne of *pe* cheekke, *with* cheualrous knyghttez,
And sythyn meles with monthe, pat he moste traistez ;
Demenys the medylwarde menskfully hym selfen,
Fittes his fote-men, alls hym faire thynkkes,
On frounte in the fore breste, the flow of his knyghtez,
His archers on aythere halfe he ordaynede *peraftyre*
To schake in a sheltrofie, to schotte when pam lykez.
He arrayed in pe rerewarde full riall knyghtez,
With renkkes renowned of pe rounde table,
Sir Raynalde, sir Richere, that rade was *never,*
The riche duke of Rown wyt[h] ryders ynewe ;
Sir Cayows, sir Clegis, and clene men of armes,
The kyog castes to kepe be paa clere strandes.
Sir Lott and *sir* Launcelotte, pise lordly knyghttez,
Sail lenge on his lefte hande, wyth legyones ynewe,
To meue in pe morne-while, zif pe myste happynne ;
Sir Cador of Cornewaile, and his kene knyghtez,
To kepe at pe karfuke, to close in per *opere :*
He plantez in siche placez pryncez and erlez,
That no powere sulde passe be no pmie" wayes.
Bot the *emperour* onone, *with* honourable knyghtez
And erlez enteres the vale, awnters to seke,
And fyndez sir Arthure with hostez arayede ;
And at his income, to ekken his sorowe,
Oure burlyche bolde kynge appon the bente howes,

With his bataile on brede, and baners displayede.
He hade pe cete forsett appon sere halfes,
Bothe the clewez and Jpe clyfez with clene men of armez,
The mosse and pe marrasse, the mounttez so hye,
"With gret multytude of men, to marre hym in pe wayes.
When *sir* Lucius sees, he sais to his lordez,
" This traytour has treunt[1] this treson to wyrche !
He has the cete forsett appon sere halfez,
All Jpe clewez and the cleyffez *with* clene men of armez !
Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt ells,
Bot feghte with oure foo-men for flee may we neuer ! "
Thane this ryche mane rathe arayes his byernez,
Rewlede his Romaynez, and reall knyghtez,
Buschez in the avawmewarde the vescounte of Rome,
Fro Viterbe to Venyse, theis valyante knyghtez ;
Dresses vp dredfully the dragone of golde,
With egles alouer, enamelede of sable ;
Drawen dreghely the wyne, and drynkyn thareaftyre,
Dukkez and dusseperez, dubbede knyghtez,
For dauncesynge of Duchemen, and dynnynge of pypez, 2030
All dynned fore dyn that in pe dale houede.
And thane *sir Lucius* on lowde said lordlyche wordez,
" Thynke on the myche renownn of zour ryche fadyrs,
And the riatows of Rome, p*at* regnede *with* lordez
And the renkez ouerrane all that regnede in erthe,
Encrochede all Cristyndome be craftes of armes ;
In eueriche a viage the victorie was halden ;
Insette all Jpe Sarazenes within seuen wyntter,
The parte fro the porte Iaffe to Paradyse zatez !
Thoghe a rewme be rebelle, we rekke it bot lyttill ! 2040
It es resone and righte the renke be restreynede !
Do dresse we tharefore, and byde we no langere,
Fore dredlesse wztAowttyn dowtte, the daye schall be ourez !"
Whene Jpeise wordez was saide, the Walsche kynge hym selfen
Whas warre of this wyderwyn, pat werrayede his knyghttez :
Brothely in the vale *with* voyce he ascryez,—
" Viscownte of Yalewnce, enuyous of dedys,

[1] Word not clear in MS.

The vaasallage of Viterbe to daye schall be reuengede !
Vnuenquiste for[1] *p*is place voyde schall I *never* !"
Thane the vyscownto valiante, *with* a uoyse noble,
Auoyeddyde the avawewarde, enuerounde his horse ;
He drissede in a derfe schelde, endenttyd *with* sable,
With a dragone engowschede, dredfull to schewe,
Deuorande a dolphyn with dolefull lates,
In seyne that otire soueraygne sulde be distroyede,
And all don of dawez with dynttez of swerddez ;[2]
For thare es noghte bot dede thare the dragone es raissede !
Thane the comlyche kynge castez in few tyre,
"With a crewell laimce cowpez full euen
Abowne pe spayre[3] a spanne, emange pe schortte rybbys,
That the splent and the spleen on the spere lengez.
The blode sprente owtte and sprede as pe horse spryngez,
And he sproulez full spakely, bot spekes he no more.
And thus has *sir* Valyant halden his avowez,
And venqwyste pe viscownte, pate victor was halden!
Thane *sir* Ewayne *sir* Fytz Vriene full enkerlye rydez
Onone to the *em-perour* his egle to towche ;
Thrughe his brode bataile he buskes belyfe,
Braydez owt his brande *with* a blyth chere,
Reuerssede it redelye, and awaye rydys ;
Ferkez in with the fewle in his faire handez,
And fittez in freely one frounte *with* his feris.
Now buskez *air* Launcelot, and braydez full euen
To *air* Luciws the lorde, and lothelye hym hyttez ;
Thurghe pawnee & platez he percede the maylez,
That the prowde pensell in his pawnche lengez,
The hede hayledc owtt behynde ane halfe fote large,
Thurghe hawberke and hanche, *with* Je harde wapyn,
The stede and the steryn mane strykes to jpe grownde,
Strake down a standerde, and to his stale wendez.
"Me lykez wele," sais *air* Loth, " zone lordez are delyucrede !
The lott lengez nowe on me, *with* leue of my lorde :
To day sail my name be laide, and my life aftyre,
Bot some leppe fro the lyfe, that on zone lawnde houez."

[1] *Mead* fro. [2] MS. swreddez. (Brock.)
[3] MS. *pe* spayre the spay ere. (Brock.)

Thane strekez the steryn, and streynys his brydyll,
Strykez into the stowre on a stede ryehe,
Enjoynede with a geaunt, and jaggede hym thorowe.
Jolyly this gentill forjustede *emoper,*
Wroghte wayes full wyde, werrayande knyghtez,
And wondes all wathely, that in pe waye stondez,
Fyghttez *with* all the frappe a furlange of waye,
Felled fele appon felde *with* his faire wapen,
Venqwiste and has the victorie of valyaunt knyghtez,
And all enverounde the vale, and voyde when hym likedc.
Thane bowmen of Bretayne brothely theraftyre
Bekerde *with* bregaundez of ferre in tha laundez,
With flonez fleterede *pay* flitt full frescly *per* frekez,
Fichene *with* fetheris thurghe *pe* fyne maylez :
Siche flyttyngc es foule pat so the flesche derys,
That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stedez;
Dartes the Duchemen dalten azaynes,
With derfe dynttez of dede, dagges thurghe scheldez ;
Qwarells qwayntly swappez thorowe knyghtez,
With iryn so wekyrly, that wynche they neuer.
So they scherenken fore schotte of pe scharppe arowes,
That all the scheltron schonte, and schoderide at ones.
Thane riche stedes rependez and rasches on armes ;
The hale howndrethe on hye appon heyghe lygges,
Bott zitte *pe* hathelieste on hy, hay then and *oper.*
All hoursches *ouer* hede harmes to wyrke.
And all theis geauntez before, engenderide *with* fendez,
Ioynez on sir Ienitall, and gentill knyghtez,
With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes,
Craschede doun crestez, and craschede braynez,
Kyllede cou[r]sers and couerde stedes,
Choppode thurghe cheualers on chalke-whytte stedez.
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them azaynes
Bot stonays and strykez doun, that in *pe* stale houys,
Till *pe* conquerour come with his kene knyghttez.
"*With* crewell contenwmce he cryede full lowde,—
" I wende no Bretonns walde bee basschede for so lyttill,
And fore barelegyde boyes, *pat* on the bente houys! "

He clekys owtte Collbrande, full clenlyche burneschte,
Graythes hym to Golapas, fat greuyde moste,
Kuttes hym euen by pe knees clenly in sondyre.
" Come down," *quod* the kynge, " and karpe to thy ferys !
Thowe arte to hye by fe halfe, I hete *pe* in trouthe !
Thow sail be handsomere in hye, *with p*e helpe of my Lorde! "
*With p*at stelen brande he strake ofe his hede.
Sterynly in pat stowre he strykes a-noper ;
Thus he settez on seuen with his sekyre knyghttez.
Whylles sexty ware seruede soo ne sessede they neuer ;
And thus at the joynenyge the geauntez are distroyede,
And at pat *journey* forjustede *with* gentill lordez.
Than the Romaynes, and the rewnkkez of pe rounde table,
Rewles them in arraye, rerewarde ande *oper,*
With wyghte wapynez of werre, thay wroghten on helmes,
Rittez with raunke stele full ryalle maylez ;
Bot they fitt them fayre, thes frekk byernez,
Fewters in freely one feraunte stedes,
Foynes ful felly with flyschande speris,
Freten of orfrayes feste appon scheldez.
So fele fay es in fyghte appon 'be felde leuyde
That iche a furthe in the firthe of rede blode rynnys.
By that swyftely one swappes ryddys tt es byleuede,
Swerdez swangen in two, his faire hanyghtez
Lyes wyde opyn welterande with hi pande stedez ;
Wondes of wale men, werkand brayys,
Facez feteled vnfaire in filteredelye es,
All craysed fortrodyn with trappe' b stedez,
The faireste fygured folde that fygurede was euer,
Alls ferre alls a furlange, a thosande at ones.
Be than the Romaynez ware rebuykytle a lyttill,
Withdrawes theym drerely, and dreches no lengare;
Oure prynce with his powere pcrsewes theym aftyre,
Prekez on[2] pe proudeste *with* his price knyghttez.
Sir *Kayous,* sir Clegis, with clene men of armes.
Enconters them at pe elyffe *with* clene men of armes,
Fyghttes faste in pe fyrth, frythes no wapen,

[1] ***Or over.*** **(Brock.)**

Felled at pe firste come fyfe hundrethe at ones.
And when they fande theym foresett with oure fers knyghtez,
Fewe men agayne fele mot fyche them bettyre;
Feghttez *with* all pe frappe, foynes *with* speres,
And faughte with the frekkeste p*at* to Fraunce Iangez.
Bot sir *Kayous* pe kene castis in fewtyre,
Chasez one a coitrsere, and to a kynge rydys ;
With a launce of Lettowe he thirllez his sydez,
That the lyuer and *pe* kmggez on pe launce lengez.
The schafte sc[h]odyrde and schott in the schire by erne,
And soughte thorowowte pe schelde, and in pe schalke rystez.
Bot kayous at the income was kepyd vnfayre
Withi a cowarde knyghte of pe kythe ryche ;
At pe *"turnynge* that tym the traytowre hym hitte'
In thorovfce the felettes, and in pe flawnke aftyre,
That the bousious launce Jpe bewells attamede,
pat braste at pe brawlynge, and brake in pe myddys.
Sir Kayows knewe wele, be pat kyde wounde,
That he was dede of pe dynte, and de u owte of lyfe.
Than he raykes in arraye and one rawt rydez,
One this ryall his dede to reuenge
" Kepe the, cowarde," and calles hym son?,
Cleues hym wyth his *clerp* brande clenlicbp„in sondire.
" Hadde thow wele d; te thy dynt with thi handes,
I hade forgeffen *pe* my dede, be Crist now of hewyn ! "
He weyndes to pe wyese kynge, and wynly hym gretes,
" l a m wathely woundide, waresche mon I *neuer* !
Wirke nowe thi wirchipe, as pe worlde askes,
And brynge me to beryell, byd I no more.
Grete wele my ladye pe qwer.e, zife pe werlde happyne,
And all pe burliche birdes pat to hir boure lengez,
And my worthily weife, pat wrethide me neuer,
Bid hire fore hir wyrchipe wirke for my saulle ! "
The kyngez confessorr come, *with* Criste in his handes,
For to comforthe the knyghte, kende hym *pe* wordes.
The knyghte coueride oa his knees *with* a kaunt herte,
And caughte his Creature pat comfurthes vs all.
Thane remmes pe ridie kynge fore rewthe at his herte,

Rydes into rowte his dede to reuenge ;
Presede into *pe* plumpe and with a prynce metes,
That was ayere of Egipt in thos este marches,
Cleues hym with Collbrande clenlyche in sondyre.
He broches euen thorowe *pe* byerne, and *pe* sadill bristes,
And at pe bake of *pe* blonke *pe* bewelks entamede !
Manly in his maly[n]coly he metes anoper,
The medill of pat myghtty, pat hym myche greuede ;
He merkes thurghe the maylez the myddes in sondyre,
That the myddys of *pe* mane on *pe* mounte fallez,
pe toper halfe of pe haunche on *pe* horse leuyde.
Of pat hurte, alls I hope, heles he *neuer* !
He schotte thorowe *pe* schiltrouws *with* his scharpe wapen,
Schalkez he schrede thurghe, -and schrenkede maylez ;
Baneres he bare down/ie, bryttenede scheldes,
Brothely with brown stele his brethe he pare vvrekes ;
Wrothely he wryththis by wyghtnesse of strenghe,
Woundes pese whydyrewyns, werrayede knyghttes,
Threppede thorowe *pe* thykkys thryttene sythis,
Thryngez throly in the thrange, and chis euen aftyre.
Thane sir Gawayne the gude, with wyrchipfull knyghttez,
Wendez in the avawewarde be tha wodde hemmys ;
Was warre of *sir* Luciw one launde there he houys,
With lordez and ligge-me that to hym selfe lengede.
Thane the empmwr enkerly askes hym sonwe,
" What will thow, Gawayne, wyrke with thi wapyn ?
I watte be thi wauerynge, thow willnez aftyre sorowe ;
I sail be wrokyn on thi wrethe, fore all thi grete wordez ! "
He laughte owtte a lange swerde, and luyschede one faste,
And *sir* Lyonell in the launde lordely hym strykes,
Hittes hym on *pe* hede, pat *pe* helme tristis ;
Hurttes his herne-pane an haunde-bredh large.
Thus he layes one *pe* lumppe, and lordlye *pern* seruede,
Wondide worthily wirchipfull knyghttez
Fighttez *with* Floreiit that beste es of swelrdez,
Till *pe* fomande blode till his fyste rynnes.
Thane *pe* Romayns releuyde, pat are ware rebuykkyde,
And all torattys oure men *with* theire riste horsses ;

Fore they see paire cheftayne be chauffede so sore,
They chasse and choppe doun oure cheualrous knyghttes.
Sir Bedwere was borne thurghe, and his breste thyrllede,
With a burlyched braunde, brode at *pe* hiltes ;
The ryall raunke stele to his herte rynnys,
And he rusches to pe erthe, rewthe es the more !
Thane *pe* conquerowr tuke kepe, and come with his strenghes
To reschewe *pe* ryche men of *pe* rounde table,
To owttraye *pe* emperowr, zif auntire it schewe,
Ewyn to *pe* egle, and " Arthure ! " askryes.
The *emperour* thane egerly at Arthure he strykez,
Awkwarde on *pe* vmbrere, and egerly hym hittez !
The nakyde swerde at *pe* nese noyes hym sare,
The blode of [the] bolde kyngtf *oner pe* breste rynnys,
Beblede at[1] *pe* brode schelde and *pe* bryghte mayles !
Oure bolde kynge bowes *pe* blonke be *pe* bryghte brydyll,
With his burlyche brande a buffette hym reches,
Thourghe *pe* brene and *pe* breste *with* his bryghte wapyn,
0 slante doun fro *pe* slote he slyttes at ones.
Thus endys *pe emperour* of Arthure hondes,
And all his austeryn oste pareofe ware affrayede.
Now they ferke to *pe* fyrthe, a fewe pat are leuede,
For ferdnesse of oure folke, by *pe* fresche strandez.
The floure of oure ferse men one ferant stedez
Folowes frekly on *pe* frekes, thate frayede was neuer.
Thane *pe* kyde conquerowr cryes full lowde,—
" Cosyn of Cornewaile, take kepe to pi selfen,
That no captayne be kepyde for non siluer,
Or *sir* Kayows dede be cruelly vengede! "
" Nay," sais *sir* Cador, " so me Cryste helpe !
Thare ne es kaysere ne kynge, *pat* vndire Criste ryngnes,
pat I ne schall kill colde dede be crafte of my handez ! "
Thare myghte men see chiftaynes, on chalke-whitte stedez,
Choppe doun in the chaas cheualrye noble ;
Bomaynes *pe* rycheste and ryall kynges,
Braste with rańke stele theire rybbys in sondyre,
Braynes forebrusten thurghe burneste helmes,

[1] *Read* al. (Brock.)

With brandez forbrittenede one brede in pe laundez.
They hewede doun haythen men with hiltede swerdez,
Be hole hundrethez on hye, by fe holte eyuyes.
Thare myghte no siluer thaym saue, ne socoure theire lyues,
Sowdane, ne Sarazene, ne senatowr of Rome.
Thane releuis pe renkes of the roundo table,
Be Jpe riche reuare that rynnys so faire ;
Lugegez thaym luflye by pa lyghte strandez,
All on lawe in pe lawnde, thas lordlyche byernes.
Thay kaire to pe karyage, and tuke what them likes,
Kamells and sekadrisses, and cofirs full riche,
Hekes, and hakkenays, and horses of armes,
Howsynge and herbergage of heythen kyngez;
They drewe owt of dromondaries dyuerse lordes,
Moyllez mylke whitte, and *meruayllous* bestez,
Elfaydes, and arrabys, and olyfauntez noble,
per are of pe Oryent, with honourable kynges.
Bot sir Arthure onone ayeres Jperaftyre
Ewyn to)pe emperowr, *with* honourable kyngis ;
Laughte hym vpe full louelyly with lordlyche knyghttez,
And ledde hym to pe layere, thare the kyng lygges.
Thane harawdez heghely, at heste of the lordes,
Hunttes vpe the haythemen, that on heghte lygges,
The Sowdane of Swrry, and certayne kynges,
Sexty of jpe cheefe senatowrs of Rome.
Thane they bussches and bawmede paire honourliche *kyngis,*
Sewed them in sendell sextifaulde aftire,
Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde
Chawnge or chawffe, zif pay myghte escheffe ;
Closed in kystys clene vnto Rome,
With theire baners abowne, theire bagis therevndyre,
In whate coufttre' pay kaire that knyghttes myghte knawe
Iche kynge be his colours, in kyth whare [he] longede.
Onone on pe secounde daye, sone by pe morne,
Twa senatows ther come, and certayne knyghttez,
Hodles fro pe hethe, *oner pe* holte eyues,
Barefote *ouer* pe bente, *with* brondes so ryche,
Bowes to pe bolde kynge, and biddis hym pe hiltes,

Whethire he will hang theym or hedde, or halde theym on lyfe,
Knelyde before Jpe conquerow in kyrtills allone ;
With carefull *contenatince* fay karpide pese wordes,—
" Twa senatowrs we are, thi subgettez of Rome,
That has sauede oure lyfe by feise salte strandys ;
Hyd vs in *pe* heghe wode, thurghe Jpe helpynge of Cr iste ;
Besekes the of socoure, as soueraygne and lorde ;
Grante vs lyffe and lym with leberall herte,
For his luffe that the lente this lordchipe in erthe !"
" I graunte," *quod* [the] gude kynge, " thurghe grace of my selfen,
I giffe zowe lyffe and lyme, and leue for~to passe,
So ze doo my message menskefully at Rome,
That ilke charge pat I zow jiffe here before my cheeffe knyghttez."
" zis," sais the senators, " that sail we ensure,
Sekerly be oure trowhes thi sayenges to fullfill ;
We sail lett for no lede fat lyffes in erthe,
Fore pape, ne for potestate, ne prynce so noble,
That ne sail lelely in lande tiń letteres pronounce,
For duke ne fore dussepere, to dye in pe payne ! "
Thane the banerettez of Bretayne broghte fern to tente s ;
There harbours ware bownn with basyns on lofte,
With warme wartire i-wys they wette them full son ;
They schouen thes schalkes schappely theraftyre,
To rekken theis Romaynes recreaunt and golden ;
Forthy schoue they them to schewe, for skomfite of Rome.
They coupylde pe kystys on kameles belyue,
On asses and arrabyes, theis honourable kynges ;
The emperowre for honowre, all by hym one,
Euen appon an olyfaunte, hys egle owtt ouere ;
Bekende them the captyfis, the kynge dide hym selfen,
And all byfore his kene men karpede thees wordes,—
" Here are the kystis," *quod* the kynge, " kaire *ouer* fe mownttez ;
Mette full monee pat ze haue mekyll zernede,
The taxe and Jpe trebutte of tene schore wynteres,
That was tenefully tynte in tym of oure elders.
Saye to Jpe senatowre, pe cete fat zemes,
That I sende hym fe somme, assaye how hym likes !
Bott byde them neuere be so bolde, whylls my blode regnes,

Efte for to brawlle pe*m* for my brode landez,
Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyn tytle,
Bot syche tresowe as this, whilles my tym lastez."
Nowe they raike to Rome the redyeste wayes,
Knylles in the capatoylle, and comowns assembles,
Soueraynge z and senators, the cete pat zemes,
Bekende them the caryage, kystis and *oper*,
Alls pe eonquerour comaunde *with* cruell wordes.
" We hafe trystily trayuellede pis tributte to feche,
The taxe and Je trewage of fowre score wyntcris,
Of I[n]glande, of Irelande and all Jrir owtt illes,
That Arthure in the Occedente ocupyes att ones.
He byddis zow neucre be so bolde, whills his blode regnes,
To brawle zowe fore Bretayne ne his brode landes,
Ne aske hym trebute ne taxe be nonkyns title,
Bot syche tresowre as this, whills his tyme lastis.
"We haffe foughtten in France, and vs es foule happenede,
And all oure myche faire folke faye are byleuede.
Eschappide there ne cheullrye, ne cheftaynes noper,
Bott choppede downn in the chasse, syche chawnse es befallen.
"We rede ze store 3owe of stone, and stuffen z*our* walles :
zow wakkens wandrethe and werre; be ware, zif zow lykes ! "
In the kalendez of Maye this caas es befallen :
The roy ryalle renownde, *'with* his rownde table,
One the coste of Costantyne by Jpe clere strandez,
Has the Romaynes ryche rebuykede for *ewer*.
Whene he hade foughtten in Fraunce, and the felde wonnen,
And fersely his foomen fellde owtte of lyfe,
He bydes for pe beryenge of his bolde knyghtez,
That in batell with brandez ware broughte owte of lyfe.
He beryes at Bayone *sir* Bedwere }pe ryche ;
The cors of Kay on pe kene at Came es beleuefede,
Koueride *with* a crystall clenly all *oner*;
His fadyre cowqueride p*at* kyth knyghtly *with* hondes.
Seyn in Burgoyne he bade to bery mo knyghttez,
Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, sir Bedwar pe ryche,
Gud *ser* Cador at Came, as his kynde askes.
Thane *sir* Arthure onone, in pe Auguste peraftyre,

Entires to Almayne wyth ostez arrayed ;
Lengez at Lusscheburghe, to lechen hys knyghttez,
With his lele ligge-men, as lorde in his awen.
And on *Christofre* daye a coneell he haldez,
Withe kynges and kaysers, clerkkes and *oper'*,
Comandez them kenely to caste all peire wittys,
How he may conquere by crafte the kythe pat he claymes.
Bot the *conquevour* kene, curtais and noble,
Karpes in the coneell theys knyghtly wordez—
" Here es a knyghto in theis kleuys, enclosside with hilles,
That I haue cowayte to knawo, because of his wordez,
That es Lorayne pe lele, I kepe noghte to layne ;
The lordchipe es louely, as ledes me telles.
I will that ducherye devyse, and dele as me lykes,
And seyn dresse wyth pe duke, if destyny suffre :
The renke rebell has bene vnto my rownde table,
Redy aye with Romaynes, and ryotte my landes.
We sail rekken full rathe, if reson so happen,
Who has ryghte to pat rente, by ryche Gode of heuen !
Than will I by Lumbardye lykande to schawe,
Sett lawe in pe lande, Jwt laste sail *exier* ;
The tyrauntez of Twrkayn[1] tempesto a littyll,
Talke with *pe* temperall, whills my tym lastez ;
I gyffe my protteccione to all pe pope landez,
My ryche pensell of pes my pople to schewe.
It es a foly to offende oure fadyr vndire Gode,
Owper Peter or Paule, *pa*, postles of Rome.
zif we spare the spmftiell, we spede bot the bettire;
Whills we haue for to speke, spille sail it *never* ! "
Now they spede at *pe* spurres, wit/iowttyn speche more,
To *pe* marche of Meyes, theis manliche knyghtez,
That es Lorrayne alosede as London es here,
Cet6[2] of pat seynzowre, that soueraynge es holden.
The kyng ferkes furthe on a faire stede,
With Ferrer and[3] Ferawnte, and *oper* foure knyghtez ;
Abowte the cote" pa seuen, they soughte at *pe* nextte,

[1] *Read* Tuskayn. (Brock.) [2] MS. Pety. (Brock.)
[3] MS. ferrerannde. (Brock.)

To seke them a sekyre place to sett withe engeynes ;
Thane they beneyde in burghe bowes of vyse,
Bekyrs at *pe* bolde kynge with boustouse lates,
Allblawsters at Arthure egerly schottes,
For to hurte hym or his horse with pat hard wapen.
The kynge schonte for no schotte, ne no schelde askys,
Bot schewes hym scharpely in his schene wedys ;
Lenges all at laysere, and lokes on the wallys,
Whare *pey* ware laweste the ledes to assaille.
" Sir," said sïr Ferrere, " a foly thowe wirkkes,
Thus nakede in thy noblaye to neghe to *pe* walles,
Sengely in thy surcotte, this eeté to reche,
And schewe *pe* wżt/iin, there to schende vs all.
Hye vs hasty lye heynwe, or we mon full happen,
For hitt they the or thy horse, it harmes for *ewer* ! "
" Ife thow be ferde," *quod* tho kyng, " I rede thow ryde vttere,
Lesse *pat* Jpey rywe the with theire rownnd wapyn !
Thow arte bot a fawntkyn, no ferly me thynkkys !
pou will be flayede for a flye *pat* on thy flesche lyglittes !
I am nothynge agaste, so me Gode helpe !
pof siche gadlynges be greuede, it greues me bot lyttill ;
Thay wyn no wirchipe of me, bot wastys theire takle ;
They sail wante or I weende, I wagen myn hevede !
Sail neuer harlotte haue happe, thorowe helpe of my Lorde,
To kyll a corownde kynge with[1] krysom enoynttede !"
Thane come *pe* herbariours, harageous knyghtez,
The hale batells on hye harrawnte theraftyre ;
And oure forreours ferse, appon fele halfes,
Come flyeande before one ferawnt stedes ;
Ferkande in arraye theire ryall knyghttez,
The renkez renownde of *pe* rownnd table.
All *pe* frekke men of Fraunce folowede thareaftyre,
Faire fittyde on frownte, and on the felde houys.
Thane the schalkes scharpelye scheftys theire horsez,
To schewen them semly in theire scheen wedes ;
Buskes in batayle with baners displayede,
With brode scheldes enbrassede, and burlyche helmys,

1 MS. with with. (Brock.)

With penouTis and pensells of ylke prynce armes,
Appayrellde with perrye and *precious* stones.
The lawnces with loraynes, and lemande scheldes,
Lyghtenande as pe leuenynge, and lemand al *oner*.
Thane the price men prekes, and proues peire horsez,
Satills to *pe* cetế, appon sere halfes ;
Enserches the subbarbes sadly thareaftyre,
Discoueris of schotte-men, and skyrmys a lyttill ;
Skayres paire skottefers, and theire skowtte-waches,
Brittenes theire barrel's with theire bryghte wapyns ;
Bett down a barbycan, and *pe* brygge wynnys.
Ne hade the garnyson bene glide at *pe* grete sates,
Thay hade wonn that wone be theire a wen strenghe.
Than withdrawes oure men, and drisses them bettyre,
For dred of *pe* drawe-brigge dasschede in sondre ;
Hyes to *pe* harbergage, thare the kynge houys
With his batell on heghe, horsyde on stedys.
Thane was *pe* prynce pwmayede, and peire places nommen,
Pyghte pauyllyons of palle, and plattes in seegge.
Thane lenge they lordly, as pem leefe thoghte,
Waches in ylke warde, as to *pe* werre falles,
Settes vp sodaynly certayne engynes.
One Sonondaye be *pe* Soone has a flethe zolden.
The kynge calles on Florente, *pat Hour* was of knyghttez,—
" The Fraunchemerre enfeblesches, ne farly me thynkkys !
They are vnfondyde folke in pa faire marches,
For them wantes pe flesche and fude that them lykes.
Here are forestez faire appon fele halues,
And thedyre feemen are flede with freliche bestes.
Thow sall foonde to *pe* fell, and forraye the mouwtes ;
Sir Forawnt and *sir* Florydas sail folowe thi brydyll;
Vs moste with some fresche mette refresche oure jople,
That are feedde in *pe* fyrthe *with* jpe froyte of pe erthe.
Thare sail weende to pis viage sir Gawayne hym selfen,
Wardayne full wyrchipfull, and so hym wele semes ;
Sir Wecharde, s*ir* Waltyre, theis wyrchipfull knyghtes,
With all wyseste men of *pe* weste marches ;
Sir Clegis, s*ir* Clarybalde, sir Claryrnownde *pe* noble,

The capytayne oo Cardyfe elenlyche arrayede.
Goo now, warne all pe wache, Gawayne and oper,
And weendes furthe on *zour* waye withowttyn moo wordes."
Now ferkes to pe fyrthe thees fresche men of armes,
To pe fell so fewe, theis fresclyche byernes,
Thorowe hopes and hymlandc hillys and *opcr,*
Holtis and hare woddes with heslyn schawes,
Thorowe marasse and mosse and montes so heghe ;
And in the myste mornynge one a mede falles,
Ma wen and vnmade, maynoyrede bott lyttyll,
In swathes sweppen down, fall of swete flowres.
Thare vnbrydills theis bolde, and baytes feire horses,
To Jpe grygynge of *pe* daye, pat byrdez[1] gan synge,
Whylls the surs of Jpe sone, pat sonde es of Cryste,
That solaces all synfull, pat syghte has in erthe.
Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, *sir* Gawayne hym selfen,
Alls he pat weysse was and wyghte,[2] wondyrs to seke ;
Than was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armyde,
Baytand on a wattire banke by pe wodde eyuis,
Buskede in brenyes bryghte to behalde,
Enbrassede a brode schelde on a blonke ryche,
With[3] biremie ony borne, bot a boye one,
Houes by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdes.
He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes of sable
"With chapes a cheynes of chalke whytte sylucr,
A charebocle in *pe* cheefe, chawngawnde of hewes,
And a cheefe antcrous, chalange who lykes.
Sir Gawayne glyftes on the gome *with* a glade will;
A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes,
Gyrdes ewen *ouere* fe streme on a stede ryche.
To pat steryn in *stour,* one strenghe pare he houys,
Egerly one Inglisce " Arthure !" he askryes.
The toper irouslye ansuers hym sone
On a launde of Lorrayne with a lowde steuen,
That ledes myghte lysten *pe* lenghe of a myle.
" Whedyr prykkes thow, pilom/,r, pat profers so large ?

[1] MS. pat byrdez that byrdes. (Brock.) [2] MS. wyghte wyghte. (Brock.)
[3] *Read* withouten ony berae. (Brock.)

Here pykes thowe no praye, profire when pe lykes !
Bot thow in pis perell[1] put of the bettire,
Thow sail be my presonere, for all thy prowde lates !'
"Sir," sais sir Gawayne, " so me Gode helpe,
Siehe glauerande gomes greues me bot lyttill.
Bot if thowe graythe thy gere, the will grefe happen,
Or thowe goo of pis greue, for all thy grete wordes."
Than peire lauwces they lachen, thes lordlyche byernez,
Laggen *'with* longe speres one lyarde stedes ;
Cowpen at awntere be kraftes of armes,
Till bothe pe crowell speres brousten att ones.
Thorowe scheldys pey schotte, and scherde thorowe males,
Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a schaft-monde large.
Thus worthy lye pes wyes wondede ere both en,
Or they wreke pem of wrethe awaye will *pey* neuer.
Than they raughte in the reyne and agayne rydes,
Redely theis rathe mene rusches owtte swerdez,
Hittes one hellmes full hertelyche dynttys,
Hewes appon hawberkes with full harde wapyns.
Full stowttly pey stryke, thire steryn knyghttes,
Stokes at pe stomake with stelyn poyntes,
Feghtten and floresche withe flawmande swerdez,
Till pe flawes of fyre flawmes one theire helmes.
Thane *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and grychgide full sore ;
With Galuthe his gude swerde grymlye he strykes,
Clefe *pe* knyghttes schelde clenliche in sondre.
Who hikes to pe lefte syde, when his horse launches,
With pe lyghte of pe sonn̄e men myghte see his lyuere.
Thane granes pe gome fore greefe of his wondys,
And gyrdis at *sir* Gawayne, as he by glentis,
And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes ;
An alet enamelde he oches in sondire,
Bristes pe rerebrace with the bronde ryche,
Kerues of at]pe coutere with pe clene egge,
Ane[n]tis pe avawmbrace, vrayllede *with* sillier.
Thorowe a dowble vesture of veluett ryche,
With pe venymous swerde a vayne has he towchede,

[1] MS. pererell. (Brock.)

That voydes so violently pat all his witte changede ;
The vesere, the aventaile, his vesturis ryche,
With the valyant blode was verrede all *oner.*
Thane this tyrante tite *turnes pe* brydill,
Talkes vntendirly, and sais, "pow arte towchede !
Vs bus haue a blode-bande, or thi ble change ;
For all *pe* harbours of Bretayne sail noghte thy blode stawnche,
For he pat es blemeste with pis brade brande, blyne schall he neuer."
"za," *quod sir* Gawayne, " thow gi'eues me hot lyttill.
Thowe wenys to glopyne me with thy gret wordez,
Thow trowes *with* thy talkynge pat my harte talmes.
Thow betydes to*ur*fere or thowe hyen turne,
Bot thow tell me tytte, and tarye no lengere,
What may staunche this blode pat thus faste rynnes."
" zise, I say *pe* sothely and sekire *pe* my trowthe,
No surgyon in Salarne sail saue *pe* bettyre,
Withthy pat thowe suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste,
To schewe shortly my schrifte, and schape for myn ende.[1]"
"zis," *quod sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe !
I gyfe *pe* grace and graunt, pofe pou hafe grefe semede,
Withthy thowe say me sothe what thowe here sekes,
Thus sengilly and sulayne all pi selfe one ;
And whate Jaye thow leues one, layne noghte pe sothe,
And whate legyauwce, and whare pow arte lorde."
" My name es *sir* Prianms ; a prynce es my fadyre,
Praysede in his partyes with prouode kynges ;
In Rome thare he regnes he es riche halden ;
He has bene rebell to Rome, and reden theire landes,
Werreyand weisely wyntters and zeres,
Be witt, and be wyssdome, and be wyghte strenghe,
And be wyrchipfull werre, his awen lias he wonn.
He es of Alexandire blode, *ouerlynge* of knyges,
The vncle of his ayele, *sir* Ector of Troye ;
And here es the kynreden that I of come,
And Iudas and Iosne, pise gentill knyghtes.
I ame apparaunt his ay ere, and ieste of oper ;
Of Alexandere and Aufrike, and all pa owte landes,
I am in possessione, and plenerly sessede.

In all pe price cetees that to pe porte langes,
I sail hafe trewly the tresowr and the londes,
And bothe trebute and taxe whills my tyni lastes.
I was so hawtayne of herte, whills I at home lengede,
I helde nane my hippe heghte vndire heuen ryche ;
Forthy was I sente hedire with seuen score knyghttez,
To asaye of this werre, be sente of my fadire ;
And I am for cirqwitrye schamely supprisede,
And be aw[n]tire of armes owtrayede fore *euere.*
Now hafe I taulde the pe kyne that I ofo come,
Will thow for knyghthede kene me thy name ?"
" Be Criste," *quod sir* Gawayne, "knyghte was I *neuer* !
With pe kydde conquerowr a knafe of his chambyre
Has wroghte in his wardrope wynters and 3eres,
One his longc armour that hym beste lykid ;
I poyne all his pavelyomis pat to hym selfe pendes,
Dyghttes his dowblettez for dukes and erles,
Aketomis auenawnt fore Arthure hym selfen,
That he vsede in werre all this aughte wyntter.
He made me jomane at zole, and gafe me gret gyftes,
And c. pounds, and a horse, and harnayse full ryche ;
Gife I happe to my hele that hende for to seme,
I be holpen in haste, I hette the forsothe."
" Giffe his knafes be syche, his knyghttez are noble ;
There es no kynge vndire Criste may kemptf *with* hym on.
He will be Alexander ayre, that all pe erthe lowttede,
Abillere pan *euer* was *sir* Ector of Troye.
Now fore the krisome p*at p*ou kaghte pat day pou was ciystenede
Whethiro thowe be knyghte or knaffe, knawe now }pe sothe."
" My name es *sir* Gawayne, I graunt pe for sothe,
Cosyn to pe conquerour, he knawes it hym selfen,
Kydd in his kalander a knyghte of his chambyre,
And rollede the richeste of all pe rounde table.
I ame pe dussepere and duke he dubbede with his hondes,
Deynttely on a daye before his dere knyghtes.
Gruche noghte, gude sir, pofe me this grace happen ;
It es lpe gifto of Gode, the gree es hys a wen."
" Petire !" sais Priamws, " now payes me bettire

Thane I of Provynce warre prynce, and of Paresche ryche !
Fore me ware *leuer* preuely be prykkyd to Jpe harte,
Than *euer* any prikkere had siche a pry so wonnyn.
Bot here es herberde at hande, in zone huge holtes,
Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede zif the lyke ;
The duke of Lorrayne the derfe, with his dere knyghtes,
The doughtyest of Dolfinede, and Duchemen many,
The lordes of Lumbardye that leders are halden,
The garnyson of Godardc gaylyche arrayede,
The wyese of pe Westuale, wirchipfull biernez,
Of Sessoyn and Surylande Sarazenes enewe ;
They are nowmerde full neghe, and namede in rollez,
Sexty thowsande and ten forsotlie of sekyre men of armez ;
Bot zif thow hye fro pis hethe, it harmes vs bothe,
And bot my hurtes be son holpen, hole be I *newer.*
Tak heede to Jns hanseman, pat he no horn blawe,
Are thowe heyly in haste beese hewen al to peces ;
For they are my retenuz to ryde whare I wyll,
Es non redyare renkes regnande in erthe.
Be thow raghte *with pat* rowtt, thow rydes no former,
Ne thow bees neuer rawnsonede for reches in erthe."
Sir Gawayn wente or pe wathe com, whare hym beste lykede,
With this wortheliche wye, that wondyd was sore ;
Merkes to pe mountayne there oure men lenges,
Baytaynde theire blonkes per on pe brode mede ;
Lordes lenande lowe on lemande scheldes,
With lowde laghttirs on lofte for lykyngc of byrdez,
Of larkes, of lynkwhyttez, pat lufflyche songen,
And some was sleghte one slepe *with* slaughte of pe pople
pat sange in *pe* seson in the schenwo schawes,
So lawe in pe lawndez so lykande notes.
Thane *sir* Whycher whas warre paire wardayne was wondyde,
And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes ;
Sir Wychere, sir Walchere, theis weise men of armes,
Had wondyre of *sir* Gawayne, and wente hym agayns,
Mett hym in the mydwaye, and mcruaile them t[h]oghte
How he maisterede pat man, so myghtty of strenghes.
Be all pe welthe of Jpe werlde, so woo was pem neuer.

" For all oure wirchipe i-wysse awaye es in erthe ! "
" Greue zow noghte," quo*d* Gawayne, " for Godis luffe of heuen ;
For this es bot gosesomere, and gyffen on erles ;
poffe my schouldire be schrede, and my schelde thyrllede,
And the wielde of myn arme werkkes a littill,
This prissonere *sir* Priamus, pat has *perilous* wondes,
Sais pat he has saluez sail soften vs bothen."
Thane stirttes to his sterape sterynfull knyghttez,
And he lordely lyghttes and laghte of his brydill,
And lete his burlyche blonke baite on pe flores ;
Bray des of his bacenette and his ryche wedis,
Bownnes to his brode schelde and bowes to pe erthe,
In all the bodye of that bolde es no blode leuede.
Than prases to *sir priamous* precious knyghtes,
Auyssely of his horse hentes hym in armes ;
His helme and his hawberke pay taken of aftyre,
And hastily for his hurtte all his herte chawngyd ;
They laide hym down in the lawndez, and laghte of his wedes,
And he lenede hym on lange, or how hym beste lykede.
A foyle of fyne golde they fande at his gyrdill,
pat es full of pe *Hour* of pe *fouur* well,
pat flowes owte of Paradice when pe flode ryses,
That myche froyt of fallez, pat feede schall vs all;
Be it frette on his flesche, pare synues are entamede,
The freke schalle be fische-halle within fowre howres.
They vncouere pat cors *with* full clene hondes ;
With clere watire a knyghte clensis theire wondes,
Keled theym kyndly, and com forth ed p*er* hertes.
And whene pe carries ware clene, pay clede them azayne ;
Barell-ferrers they brochede, and broghte them the wyne,
Bothe brede and brawn, and bredis full ryche ;
When pay hade eten anon they armede after.
Thane tha awntrende men " *as armes!*" askryes,
With a claryoune clere, thire knyghtez togedyre,
Callys to concell, and of this case tellys :—
" zondyr es a companye of clene men of armes,
The keneste in contek pat vndir Criste lenges ;
In zone oken wode an oste are arrayede,

Vndirtakande men of piese owte Ion des ;
As sais vs sir Priamous, so helpe seynt Peter ! "
" Go, men," *quod* Gawayne, "and grape in 3our hertez,
Who sail graythe to 3one greue to 3one gret lordes ;
zif we gettlesse goo home, the kyng will be greuede,
And say we are gadlynges, agaste for a lyttill.
We are *with sir* Florente, as todaye falles,
That es floure of Fraunce, for he fleede neucr ;
He was chosen and chargegide in chambire of pe kynge,
Chiftayne of pis jowrnee *with* cheualrye noble ;
Whethire he fyghte or he flee, we sail folowe aftyre ;
Fore all pe fere of zone folke forsake sail I neuer."
"Fadyre,"'sais *sir* Florent, " full faire ;e it tell !
Bot I ame bot a fawntkyn, vnfraystede in armes ;
zif any foly befall, pe fawte sail be owrs,
And fremdly o Fraunce be flemede for *euer.*
Woundes noghte z*our* wircliipe, my witte es bot symple ;
ze are owre wardayne i-wysse, wyrke as zow e lykes ;
ze are at the ferreste noghte passande fyve hundrethe,
And pat es fully to fewe to feghte with them all,
Fore harlottez and hansemene sail helpe bott littill;
They will hye theym hyen for all peire gret wordes.
I rede ze wyrke aftyre witte, as wyesse men of armes,
And warpes wylily awaye, as wirchipfull knyghtes."
" I grawnte," *quod sir* Gawayne, "some Gode helpe !
Bot here are galyarde gomes pat of pe gre scruis,
The kreuelleste knyghttes of jpe kynges chambyre,
That kane carpe with the coppe knyglitly wordes ;
We sail proue todaye who sail the prys wyn."
Nowe forriours fers vnto pe fyrthe rydez,
And foungez a faire felde, and on fotte lyghttez ;
Prekes aftyre pe pray, as pryce men of armes.
Florent and Floridas, with fyve score knyghttez,
Folowede in pe foreste, and on pe way fowndys,
Flyngande a faste trott, and on *pe* folke dryffes.
Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundreth
Of freke men to pe fyrthe, appon fresche horses ;
One *sir* Feraunt before, apon a fayre stede,

Was fosterde in Famacoste, the fende was his fadyre,
He flenges to *sir* Florent, and pristly he kryes,—
" Why flees thow, falls knyghte ? *pe* fende hafe pi saule !"
Thane *sir* Florent was fayne, and in fewter castys ;
One Fawuell of Fryselande to[1] Feraunt he rydys,
And raghte in pe reyne on pe stede ryche,
And rydes towarde the rowte, restes he no lengere.
Full butt in *pe* frounte he flysches hym euen,
And all dysfegowres his face with his fell wapen.
Thurghe his bryghte bacenette his brayne has he towchede,
And brusten his neke-bone, pat all his breste[2] stoppede.
Thane his cosyn askryede, and cryede full lowde,
" Thowe has killede colde dede *pe* kynge of all knyghttes !
He has bene fraistede on felde in fyftene rewmes ;
He fonde neuer no freke myghte feghte *with* hym one.
Thow schall dye for his dede *with* my derfo wapen,
And all *pe* doughtty for dule pat in zoue dale houes."
" Fy," sais sir Floridas, " thow fleryande wryche !
Thow wenes for to flay vs, floke-mowthede schrewe! "
Bot Floridas *with* a swerde, as he by glenttys,
All *pe* flesche of pe flanke he flappes in sondyre,
That all *pe* filthe of *pe* freke and fele of the guttes
Foloes his fole fotte, whene he furthe rydes.
Than rydes a renke to reschewe pat byerne,
pat was Raynalde of *pe* Rodes, and rebell to Criste,
Peruertede *with* paynyms *pat* Cristen persewes ;
Presses in prowdly, as *pe* praye wendes,
Fore he hade in Prewsslande myche pryce wonnen ;
Forthi in presence thare he profers so large.
Bot thane a renke, *sir* Richere of *pe* rounde table,
One a ryall stede rydes hym azaynes ;
Thorowe a rowimde rede schelde he ruschede hym sone,
That the rosselde spere to his herte rynnes.
The renke relys abowte and rusches to *pe* erthe,
Boris full ruydlye, bot rade he no more.
Now all pat es fere and vnfaye of pes fyve hundreth
Falles on *sir* Florent, a fyve score knyghttes,

[1] MS. te. (Brock.) [2] *Apparently for* brethe. (Brock.)

Betwyx a plasche and a flode, appon a flate lawnde,
Oure folke fongen theire felde, and fawghte them agaynes.
Than was lowde ajjpon lofte "Lorrayne!" askryede,
When ledys with longe speris lasschen togedyrs,
And "Arthure!" on oure syde, when theym oghte aylede.
Than *sir* Florent and Floridas in fewtyre pey caste,
Fruschen on all *pe* frape, and biernes affrayede;
Fellis fyve at pe frounte thare they fyrste enteride,
And, or they ferke forthire, fele of pese *opere*.
Brenyes browdden they briste, brittenede scheldes,
Bettes and beres down the best *pat them* byddes;
All pat rewlyd in the rowtte they ryden awaye,
So rewdly they rere theys ryall knyghttes.
When *sir Priamoius, p*at prince, pcrsayuede theire gamen,
He hade pete" in herte pat he ne durste profire;
He wente to *sir* Gawayne, and sais hym *pese* wordes,—
"Thi price men fore thi praye putt are all vndyre,
They are *with* Sarazenes ouersette, mo pan seuen hundreth
Of *pe* Sowdanes knyghtes owt of sere londes;
Walde pow suffire me, *sir*, for sake of thi Criste,
With a soppe of thi men suppowell theym ones."
"I grouche noghte," *quod* Gawayne, *"pe* gree es paire awen,
They mon hafe gwerddouns full grett graunt of my lorde,
Bot the freke men of Fraunce fraiste them selfen,
Frekes faughte noghte peire fill this fyftene wynter;
I will noghte stire *with* my stale halfe a stede lenghe,
Bot they be stedde *with* more stuffe than on jone stede houys."
Than *sir* Gawayne was warre, withowttyn *pe* wode henimes,
Wyes of *pe* Westfale appon wyght horsez,
Walopande wodely, as *pe* waye forthes,
With all *pe* wapyns i-wys pat to *pe* werre longez.
The erle Antele the olde, the avawmwarde lie buskes,
Ayerande on ayther hande heghte thosande knyghtez;
His pelours and pauysers passede all nombyre,
That euer any prynce lede puruayede in erthe.
Than *pe* duke of Lorrayne dresesse thareaftyre,
With dowbill of *pe* Duchemen pat doughtty ware holden;
Paynymes of Pruyslande, prekkers full noble,

Come prekkande before with Priamows knyghttez.
Than saide the erle Antele to Algere his *broker,*—
" Me angers ernestly at Arthures knyghtez,
Thus enkerly on an oste awnters *pe* m selfen ;
They will be owttrayecle anon, are vndron rynge,
Thus folily on a felde to fyghte with vs all.
Bot they be fesede in faye, ferly me thynkes ;
Walde they pwrposse take, and passe on theire wayes,
Prike home to theire pry nee, and theire pray leue,
They myghte lenghen theire lyefe, and lossen bott littill,
It wolde lyghte my herte, so helpe me oure Lorde ! "
" Sir," sais sir Algere, " thay hafe littill vsede
To be owttrayede withe oste : me angers pe more.
The fayreste schall be full feye, pat in oure floke ryddez,
Alls fewe as they bene, are they the felde leue."
Than gud Gawayne, gracious and noble,
All with glorious gle he gladdis his knyghtes ;
" Gloppyns noghte, gud men, for gleterand scheldes,
zofe zone gadlyngez be gaye on zone gret horses.
Banerettez of Bretayne, buskes vp z*our* hertes !
Bees noghte baiste of zone boyes, ne of faire bryghte wedis !
We sail blenke theire boste for all theire blode profire,
Als bouxom as birde es in bede to liir lorde.
zeffe we feghte todaye, pe felde schall be owrs,
The fekill faye sail faile, and falssede be distroyede.
zone folk is one frountere, vnfraistede theym semes ;
Thay make faythe and faye to pe fend seluen.
"We sail in this viage victoures be holden,
And avauntede with voycez of valyant biernez ;
Praysede with pryncez in presence of lordes,
And luffede with ladyes in dyucrse londes.
Aughte n*euer* siche honoure none of oure elders,
Vnwyn ne Absolon ne non of thies *oper.*
When we are moste in destresse, Marie we mene,
That es oure maisters seyne, pat lie myche traistez ;
Melys of pat mylde qwene, that menskes vs all;
Who so meles of pat mayde, myskaries he neuer."
Be pese wordes ware saide, they ware noghte ferre behynde

Bot the lenghe of a launde, and " Lorayne! " askryes.
Was *neuer* siche a justyngc at jowne' in erthe,
In the vale of Iosephate, as gestes vs telles,
When Iulyus & Ioatall ware juggede to dy,
As was when pe ryche men of pe rownde table
Ruschede into p*e* rowte one ryall stedes.
For so raythely pay rusche with roselde speris,
That the raskaille was rade, and rane to pe grefes,
And karede to pat courte as cowardes for *euer.*
" *Peter* ! " sais *sir* Gawayne, " this gladdez myn herte !
That 3one gedlynges are gon, that made gret nowmbre ;
I hope that thees harlottez sail harme vs bot littill,
For they will hyde tliem in haste within zone holte euis.
Thay are fewere one fekle pan pay were fyrste nombirde,
Be fourtty thousande in faythe, for all theyre faire hostes."
Bot one Iolyan of Iene, a geante full howge,
Has jonede on *sir* Ierantc, a justis of Walis ;
Thorowe a jerownde schelde he jogges hym thorowe,
And a fyn gesserawnte of gentill mayles,
Ioynter and gemows, he jogges in sondyre.
One a jambe stede pis jurnee he makes ;
Thus es pe geante forjuste, that errawnte le we,
And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym pe more.
Than the genatowrs of Genne enjoynes att ones,
And frykis on pe frowntere well a fyve hundreth ;
A freke highte *sir* Federike, with full fele *oper,*
Ferkes on a frusche, and fresclyche askryes
To fyghte with oure forreours, pat on felde houis.
And thane the ryalle renkkes of p*e* rownde table
Rade furth full ernestly, and rydis them agaynes,
Mellis with the medill-warde, bot they ware ill machede ;
Of siche a grett multytude was mmiayle to here.
Seyne at pe assemble the Sarazenes discoucres
The soueraynge of Sessoyne, that saluede was neuer ;
Gyawntis forjustede with gentill knyghtes,
Thorowe gesserawntes of Iene jaggede to pe herte.
They hewe thorowe helmes hawtayne biernez,
pat pe hiltede swerdes to paire hertes rynnys

Than pe renkes renownde of pe rownd table
Kyffes and ruysscheS down renayede wreches ;
And thus they dreuen to pe dede dukes and erles,
All pe dreghe of pe daye, with dredfull werkes.
Than *sir Priamous p*e prynce, in presens of lordes,
Presez to his penown, and pertly it hentes,
Reuertede it redily, and awaye rydys
To pe ryall rowte of pe rownde table ;
And heyly his retenuz raykes hym aftyre,
For they his reson had rede on his schelde ryehe.
Owte of pe scheltrone pey schede, as schepe of a folde,
And steris furth to *pe* stowre, and stode be peire lorde.
Seyne they sent to pe duke, and saide hym pise wordes,—
" We hafe bene thy sowdeours this sex *pre* and more ;
We forsake pe todaye be serte of owre lorde ;
We sewe to oure soucraynge in sere kynges londes.
Vs defawtes oure feez of Jns foure wynt fores ;
Thow arte feble and false, and noghte bot faire wordes ;
Oure wages are werede owte, and pi werre endide,
We maye *with* oure wirchipe weend whethire vs lykes.
I red powe trette of a trewe, and trofle no lengere,
Or pow sail tyne of thi tale ten thosande or euen."
" Fy a debles ! " saide pe duke, " the deuell haue *pier* bones !
The dawngere of zon doggez drede schall I neuer.
We sail dele this daye, be dedes of armes,
My dede, and my ducherye, and my dere knyghtes ;
Siche sowdeows as ze I sett bot att lyttill,
That sodanly in defawte forsakes theire lorde."
The duke[1] in his schelde and dreches no lengere,
Drawes hym a dromedarie, with dredfull knyghtez,
Graythes to *sir* Gawayne, with full gret nowmbyre
Of gomes of Gernaide, that greuous are holden.
Thas fresche horsesede men to pe frownt rydes,
Felles of oure *forreours* be fourtty at ones.
They hade foughtten before with a fyve hundrethe ;
It was no ferly, in faythe, pofe they faynt waxen.
Thane sir Gawayne was grefede, and grypys his spere,

[1] A word is wanting here.

And gyrdez in agayne with galyarde knyghttez ;
Metes pe maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe,
As man of pis medill-erthe, pat moste hade greuede.
Bot on Chastelaync, a childe of pe kynges chambyre,
Was warde to *sir* Wawayn of pe weste marches,
Cheses to *sir* Cheldrike, a cheftayne noble,
With a chasywg spere he chokkes hym thurghe.
This chekke hym eschewede be chauncez of armes ;
So pay chase *pat* childe, eschape may he *neucr* !
Bot on Swyan of Swecy, *with* a swerde egge,
The swyers swyre-bane he swappes in sondyre.
He swounande diede, & on pe swarthe lengede,
Sweltes ewynwe swiftly, and swanke he no more.
pan *sir* Gawayn gretes with his gray eghne ;
The guyte was a gude man, begynnande of armes.
Fore the charry childe so his chere chawngide,
That the chillande watire on his chekes rynnyde.
" Woo es jne," *quod* Gawayne, " that I ne weten hade ;
I sail wage for that wye all pat I welde,
Bot I be wroken on that wye, that thus has hym wondyde !"
He dresses hym drerily, and to Þe duke rydes,
Bot one *sir* Dolphyn the derfe dyghte hym agaynes,
And *sir* Gawayne hym gyrd with a giym launce,
That the grounden spere glade to his herte.
And egerly he hente owte, and hurte *anoper,*
An haythen knyghte, Hardolfe, happye in armes ;
Sleyghly in at the slotte slyttes hym thorowe,
That the slydande spere of his hande sleppes.
Thare es slayne in pat slope, be elagero of his hondes,
Sexty slongen in a slade of sleghe men of armes.
pofe *sir* Gawaynwe ware wo, he wayttes hym by,
And was warre of pat wye that the childe wondyde,
And with a swerde swiftly he swappes hym thorowe,
That he swyftly swelte, and on *pe* erthe swounes.
And thane he raykes to pe rowte, and ruysches one helmys ;
Riche hawberkes he rente, and rasede schyldes,
Eydes on a rawndoune, and his rayke holdes ;
Thorowowte pe rerewarde he holdes wayes,

And thare raughte in the reyne this ryall pe ryche,
And rydez into pe rowte of pe rownde table.
Thane oure cheualrous[2] men changen theire horsez,
Chases and choppes down cheftaynes noble,
Hittes full hertely on helmes and scheldes,
Hurtes and hewes down hay then knyghtez.
Ketell-hattes they cleue euen to pe scholdirs ;
Was *neuer* siche a *clamour* of capitaynes in erthe.
Thare was kynges Sonnes kaughte, curtays and noble,
And knyghtes of pe eontre\ that knawen was ryche ;
Lordes of Lorayne and Lumbardye bothen
Laugh[t]e was, and lode in with oure lele knyghttez ;
Thas pat chasede that daye, theire chaunce was bettire,
Swiche a choke at a chace escheuede theym neucr.
When *sir* Florent, be fyghte, had pe felde wonen,
He ferkes ine before with fyve score knyghttez;
Theire prayes and peire prcsoneres passes one aftyre,
"Witlt pylours, and pauysers, and pryse men of armes.
Thane gudly *sir* Gawayne gydes his knyghttez,
Gas in at pe gayneste, as gydes hym telles,
Fore greffe of a garysone of full gret lordes
Sulde noghte gripe vpe his gere, ne swyche grame wirche.
Forethy they stode at the straytez, and with his stale houede,
Till his prayes ware paste the pathe that he dredis;
When they the cete" myghto see that the kyng seggede,
Sothely the same daye was wit[h] asawte wonnen.
An hawrawde hyes before, the beste of the lordes,
Horn at pe herbergage, owt of tha hyghe londes ;
Tornys tytte to pe tente, and to the kynge telles
All the tale sothely, and how they hade spede ;—
" All thy forreowrs are fere, that forrayede withowttyn,
Sir Florent, and *sir* Floridas, and all thy ferse knyghtez ;
Thay hafe forrayede and foghten with full gret nowmbyre,
And fele of thy foo-men has broghte owt of lyffe.
Oure wirchipfull wardayne es wele escheuyde,
For he has wonn todaye wirchipe for eucre,
He has Dolfyn slayne, and pe duke takyn ;

[1] MS. cheualrowrs. (Brock.)

Many dowghty es dede be dynt of his hondes.
He has prisoners price, pryncez and erles,
Of pe richeste blode pat regnys in erthe ;
All thy cheuallrous men faire are eschewede,
Bot a childe Chasteleynwe myschance es befallen."
"Hawtayne," sais *pe* kyng, "harawde, be Criste !
Thow has helyd myn herte, I hete the forsothe !
I zife the in Hamptone a hundreth pownde large."
The kynge pan to assawte he sembles his knyghtez,
"With somercastell and sowe appon sere halfes ;
Skyftis his skotiferis, and skayles the wallis,
And iche wache[1] has his warde with wiese men of armes.
Thane boldly pay buske, and ben des engynes,
Payses in pylotes and proues theire castes ;
Mynsteris and masondewes they malle to pe erthe,
Chirches and chapells chalke-whitte blawnchede.
Stone [s]tepells full styffe in pe strete ligges,
Chawmbyrs with chymnés, and many cheefe inns,
Paysede and pelid down playsterede walles ;
The pyne of pe pople was pete for to here.
Thane pe duchez hire dyghte with clamesels ryche,
The cowntas of Crasyn with hir clere maydyns,
Knelis down in pe kyrnelles thare the kyng houede,
On a couerede horse comlyli arayede ;
They knewe hym by contenaunce, and cricde full lowde,—
" Kyng crownede of kynde, take kepe to pese wordes !
We beseke zow, sir, as soucraynge and lorde,
That ze safe vs todaye, for sake of zoure Criste !
Send vs some socoure, and saughte with the pople,
Or pe cete" be sodaynly with assav:te wonnen ! "
He weres his vesere with a vowt noble ;
With vesage verteuous, this valyante bierne
Meles to hir myldly with full moke wordes,—
" Sail no mysse do Jow, ma dame, pat to me lenges ;
I gyf zow chartire of pes, & zoure cheefe maydens,
The childire and pe chaste men, the cheualroiw knyghtez ;

[1] Or wathe. (Brock.)

The duke es in dawngere, dredis it bott littyll,
He sail idene *pe* full wele, dout zow noghte elles."
Thane sent he on iche a syde to certayne lordez,
For to leue pe assawte, the cete was golden ;
With *pe* erle eldeste son he sent hym pe kayes,
And seside pe same nyghte, be sent of pe lordes.
The duke to Douere es dyghte, and all his dere knyghtez,
To duelle in dawngere and dole p*e* dayes of hys lyue.
Thare fleede, at the ferrere 3ate, folke withowttyn noiſibyre,
For ferde of *sir* Florent and his fers knyghtez ;
Voydes the ceté and to the wode rynnys,
With vetaile, and vessell, and *veston-re* so ryclie.
Thay buske vpe a banere abown pe brode zates ;
Of *sir* Florent, in fay, so fayne was he *newer.*
The knyghte houys on a hyll, behelde to pe wallys,
And saide, " I see be zone syngne the cete es oures."
Sir Arthure enters anon with hostes arayede,
Euen at p*e* vndron etles to lenge.
In iche leucre on lowde the kynge did crye,
Of payne of lyf and lym and lesyngc of londes,
That no lele lige-mane, that to hym lonragede,
Sulde lye be no ladysse, ne be no lelo maydyns,
Ne be no burgesse wyffe, better ne werse,
Ne no biernez mysebide, that to pe burghe longede,
When pe kyng Arthure hade lely conquerid,
And the castell coucerede of pe kythe riche,
All pe crowell and kene, be craftes of armes,
Captayns and constables, knewe hym for lorde.
He deuysede and delte to dyucrse lordez,
A dowere for pe duchez and hir dere childire ;
Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde all pe londez,
That he had wonnen of werre, thorowe his weise knyghtez.
Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lorde in his awen,
Settez lawes in the lande, as hym leefe t[h]oghte ;
And one pe Lammese day to Lucerne he wendez,
Lengez thare at laysere with lykynge inowe.
Thare his galays ware graythede, a full gret nombyre,
All gleterand as glase, vndire grene hyllys,

"*With* cabanes couerede for kynges anoyntede,
With clothes of clere golde for knyghtez and *oper;*
Sone stowede theire stuffe, and stablis peire horses,
Strekes streke ouer pe strem into pe strayte londez.
Now he moues his myghte *with* myrthes of herte,
Ouere mowntes so hye, pase *merimilous* wayes ;
Gosse in by Goddarde, the garett he wynnys,
Graythes the garnison grisely wondes.
When he was passede the heghte, than the kyng houys
With his hole bataylle, behaldande abowte,
Lukande one Lurabarddye, and one lowde melys,—
" In zone lykande londe, lorde be I thynke."
Thane they cayre to Combe, with kyngez anoyntede,
That was kyde of *pe* coste, kay of all *oper.*
Sir Florent and sir Floridas pan fowndes before,
With freke men of Fraunce well a fyve hundreth ;
To *pe* ceté vnsene thay soghte at *pe* gayneste,
And sett an enbuschement, als *pern* selfe lykys.
Thane ischewis owt of *pat* ceté, full sone be *pe* morne,
Slak discouerowrs, skyftes theire horses ;
Than skyftes pes skouerowrs, and skippes on hyllis,
Diskoueres for skulkers that they no skathe lymppen ;
Poucrall and pastorelles passede on aftyre,
With porkes to pasture at the price 3ates ;
Boyes in pe subarbis bourden full heghe,
At a bare synglere that to *pe* bente rynnys.
Thane brekes oure buschemen̄t, and the brigge Wynnes,
Brayedez into *pe* burghe *with* baners displayede,
Stekes and stabbis thorowe that them azayne-stondes;
Fowre stretis, or Jmy stynte, they stroyen fore *euere.*
Now es the conquerowr in Combe, and his courte holdes
Within *pe* kyde castell, with kynges enoynttede ;
Reconsaillez the comouns pat to *pe* kyth lengez,
Comfourthes *pe* carefull with knyghtly wordez ;
Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys awen ;
Bot all *pe* contre" and he full sone ware accordide.
The syre of Melane herde saye *pe* cete was wonnen,
And send to Arthure sertayne lordes,

Grete sommes of golde, sexti horse chargegid,
Besoghte hym as soucrayne to *socoure pe* pople,
And saide he wolde sothely be sugette for *ewer*,
And make hym seruece and suytte for his sere londes ;
For plesaunce of Pawnee, and of Pownte Tremble,
For Pyse, and for Pavy, he profers full large,
Bothe purpwr, and palle, and precious stonys,
Palfrayes for any prynce, and prouede stedes ;
And ilke a zere for Melan a melion of golde,
Mekely at Martynmesse to menske *with* his hordes ;
And *ewer* withowttyn askyngc he and his ayers
Be homagers to Arthure, whills his lyffe lastis.
The kynge be his concell a condethe hym sendis,
And he es comen to Combe, and knewe hym as lorde.
Into Tuskane he tournez, when p*us* wele tymede,

Takes townees full tyte with towrres full heghe ;
"Walles he welte down, wondyd knyghtez,
Towrres he turnes, and turmentez pe pople,
"Wroghte wedewes full wlonke, wrotherayle synges,
Ofte wery and wepe, and wryngen theire handis ;
And all he wastys with werre, thare he awaye rydez,
Thaire welthes and theire wonny[n]ges, wandrethe he wroghte.
Thus they spryngen and sprede, and sparis bot lyttill,
Spoylles dispetouslyo, and spillis theiro vynes ;
Spendis vnsparely, pat sparede was lange,
Spedis them to Spolett with speris inewe.
Fro Spayne into Spruyslande the worde of hym sprynges,
And spekynngs of his spencis, disspite es full hugge.
Towarde Viterbe this valyant avires the reynes ;
Avissely in pat vale he vetailles his biernez,
"With vernage, and *oper* wyne, and venyson baken ;
And one the vicounte londes he visez to lenge.
Vertely the avawmwarde voydez theire horsez,
In the Vertennon vale, the vines imangez ;
Thare suggeotcrnes this soucrayne, with solace in herte,
To see when the senators sent any wordes;
Reuell *with* riche wyne, riotes hym selfen,
This roy with his ryall men of p*e* rownde table,

With myrthis, and melodye, and mankyn gamnes ;
Was neucr meriere men made on this erthe.
Bot one a Seterdaye at none, a seuenyghte thareaftyre,
The konyngeste cardynall that to the courte lengede
Knelis to *pe* conquerowr, and karpes thire wordes,
Prayes hym for *pe* pes, and profyrs full large,
To hafe pete" of pe pope, pat put was atvndere ;
Besoghte hym of surrawns, for sake of oure Lorde,
Bot a seuenyghte daye to }pay ware all semblede,
And they schulde sekerlye hym see the Sonoiidaye peraftyre,
In the cete' of Rome as souerayngne and lorde,
And crown hym kyndly *with* krysomede hondes,
"*With* his ceptre, as soumiynge and lorde.
Of this vndyrtakyngtf ostage are comyn,
Of ayers full auenaient awughte score childrenne,
In toges of tarsse full richelye attyryde,
And betuke them the kynge, and his clere knyghttes.
When they had tretide thiere trewe, *with* trowmpvnge *perafter*
They tryne vnto a tente, whare tables whare raysede ;
The kynge hym selfen es sette, and certayne lordes,
Vndyre a sylure of sylke, sawghte at the burdez,
All the senatowrs are setto sere be *pam* one,
Serfed solemply with selcouthe metes.
The kynge myghtty of myrthe, with his mylde wordes,
Rehetez the Romaynes at his riche table,
Comforthes the cardynall so knyghtly[1] hym seluen ;
And this roye ryall, as romawns vs tellis,
Reuerence the Romayns in his riche table.
The tawghte men and *pe* conynge, when them tym thoghte,
Tas theire lefe at *pe* kynge, and tornede agayne ;
To *pe* cete pat nyghte thaye soughte at *pe* gayneste,
And thus the ostage of Rome *with* Arthure es leuede.
Than this roy royall rehersys theis wordes,—
" Now may we reuell and riste, fore Rome es oure awen,
Make oure ostage at ese, pise auenaunt[2] childyren,[3]
And luk ze honden them all that in myn oste lengez ;

[1] MS. kynghtly. (Brock.) [2] MS. auenaumt. (Brock.)
[3] Unusual sign for r here and in I. 3683 *rde.*

The emperowr of Almayne, and all theis este marches,
We sail be ouerlynge of all fat on the erthe lengez.
We will by pe Crosse dayes encroche[1] *p*eis londez,
And at pe Crystynmesse daye be crownend[2] theraftyre ;
Ryngne in my ryalltés, and holde my rownde table,
Withe the rentes of Rome, as me beste lykes ;
Syne graythe *oner p*e grette see with gud men of armes,
To reuenge the renke that on the Rode dyede."
Thane this comlyche kynge, as cronycles tellys,
Bownnys brathely to bede with a blythe herte ;
Of he slynges with sleghte, and slakes gyrdill,
And fore slewthe of slomowre on a slepe fallis.
Bot be ane aftyre mydnyghte all his mode changede ;
He mett in the morne-while full *memajlous* dremes.
And when his dredefull drem whas drefen to f e ende,
The kynge dares for dowte, dye as he scholde,
Sendes aftyre phylosophers, and his affraye telles ;—
" Sen I was formede in fayth, so ferde whas I *neuer*!
Forthy rawneakes redyly, and rede me my swefemiys,
And I sail redily and ryghte rehersen the sothe.
Me thoughte I was in a wode willed myn one,
That I ne wiste no waye whedire fat I scholde,
Fore woluez, and whilde swymie, and wykkyde bestez ;
Walkede in that wasterrme, wathes to seche.
Thare lyouns full lothely lykkyde peire tuskes,
All fore lapynge of blude of my lele knyghtez.
Thurghe fat foreste I flede, thare floures whare heghe,
For to fele me for ferde of tha foule thyngez ;
Merkede to a medowe with montayngues enclosyde,
The meryeste of medill-erthe that men myghte beholde.
The close was in compas castyn all abowte,
With claucr and clereworte clede euen oner ;
The vale was enuerownde[3] with vynes of siluer,
All with grapis of golde, *gretter* ware neuer,
Enhorilde with arborye and alkyns trees,
Erberis full honeste, and hyrdez perevndyre.

[1] MS. Encroche, encroche. (Brock.) [2] *Read* crowned,
[3] MS. euen rownde. (Brock.)

All froytez foddenid was pat floreschede in erthe,
Faire frithed in frawnke appon tha free bowes;
Whas thare no downkynge of dewe that oghte dere scholde,
With pe drowghte of pe daye all drye ware pe flores.
Than discendis in the dale, down fra fe clowddez,
A duches dere worthily dyghte in dyaperde wedis,
In a surcott of sylke full selkouthely hewed e,
All with loyotottr oucrlaide lowe to pe hemmes,
And with ladily lappes the lenghe of a zerde,
And all redily reuersside *with* rebanes of golde,
Bruchez and besauntez, and ofer bryghte stonys,
With[1] hir bake and hir breste was brochede all ouer,
With kelle and with corenall clenliche arrayede,
And pat so comely of *colour* on knowen was *newer.*
Abowte cho whirllide a whele with hir whitte hondez,
Ouerwhelme all qwayntely pe whele as cho scholde ;
The rowell whas rede golde *with* ryall stonys,
Raylide with reched and rubyes inewe ;
The spekes was splentide all with speltis of *siluer,*
The space of a spere lenghe springande full faire ;
Thereone was a chayere of chalke-whytte siluer,
And chekyrde with charebocle chawngynge of hewes ;
Appon pe compas ther clewide kyngis one rawe,
With corowns of clere golde pat krakede in sondire :
Sex was of pat setill full sodaynliche fallen,
like a segge by hym selfe, and saide theis wordez,—
'That *ewer* I rengnede on pir rog, me rewes it *ewer* !
Was *newer* roye so riche that regnede in erthe !
Whene I rode in my rowte, roughte I noghte ells,
Bot reuaye, and reuell, and rawnson the pople.
And thus I drife forthe my dayes, wliills I dreghe myghte,
And therefore derflyche I am dampnede for *ewer.'*
The laste was a lityll man that laide was benethe,
His leskes laye all lene and latheliche to schewe,
The lokkes lyarde and longe the lenghe of a zerde,
His lire and his lygham lamede full sore ;

[1] ' *With'* probably belongs to the preceding line. (Brock.)

pe[1] two eyne of pe byeryn was brighttere pan siluer,
The *toper* was zalowere then the zolke of a naye.
[1]I was lorde,' *quod* the lede, ' of londes inewe,
And all ledis me lowttede that lengede in erthe ;
And nowe es lefte me no lappe my lygham to hele,
Bot lightly now am I loste, lene iche mane the sothe.'
The secunde sïr forsothe pat sewede them aftyre,
Was sekerare to my sighte, and sad dare in armes ;
Ofte he syghede vnsownde, and said theis wordes,—
' On zone see hafe I sitten, als soucrayne and lorde,
And ladys me louede to lappe in theyre armes ;
And nowe my lordehippes are loste, and laide for *euer* !'
The thirde thorowely was throo, and thikke in the schuldyrs,
A thra man to threttе of, there thretty ware gaderide;
His dyadem was droppede down, dubbyde *with* stonys,
Endente all with diamawndis, and dighte fro pe nonis ;
'I was dredde in my dayes,' he said, 'in dyuerse rewmes,
And now dampnede to pe dede, and dole es the more.'
The fourte was a faire mane, and forsesy in armes,
pe fayreste of fegure that fournede was euer.
' I was frekke in my faithe,' he said, ' whills I one fowlde regnede,
Famows in ferre londis, and floure of all kynges ;
Now es my face defadide, and foule es me hapnede,
For I am fallen fro ferre, and frendles byleuyde.'
The fifte was a faire man pan fele of pies *oper*,
A forsesy man and a ferse, with fomand lippis ;
He fongede faste on pe feleyghes, and fayled his armes,
Bot zit he failede and fell a fyfty fote large ;
Bot zit he sprange and sprente, and spradden his armes,
And one pe spere-lenghe spekes, he spekes pire wordes—
' I was in Surrye a syr, and sett be myn one,
As soucrayne and seyngnowr of sere kynges londis ;
Now of my solace I am full sodanly fallen,
And for sake of my syn, zone sete es me rewede.'
The sexte hade a sawtere semliche bownden,
"With a surepel of silke sewede full faire,
A harpe and a hande-slynge with harde flynte stones ;

[1] *For pe* tone eye ? (Brock.)

What harmes he has hente he halowes full sone,—
'I was demede in my dayes,' he said, 'of dedis of armes
One of the doughtyeste that duellede in erthe ;
Bot I was merride one molde in my moste strenghethis,
With this may den so mylde, fat mofes vs all.'
Two kynges ware clymbande, and clauerande one heghe,
The creste of *pe* compas they couette full zerne ;
'This chaire of charbokle,' they said, 'we chalange hereaftyre,
As two of *pe* cheffeste chosen in erthe.'
The childire ware chalke-whitte, cliekys and *oper,*
Bot the chayere abownne cheuede they *neuer*:
The forthirmaste was freely, *with* a frount large,
The faireste of fyssnamy pat fowrmede was *euer*;
And he was buskede in a blee of a blewe noble,
With flourdelice of golde floreschede al *ouer;*
The *toper* was cledde in a cote all of clene siluer,
With a comliche crosse coruen of golde,
Fowre crosselettes krafty by *pe* crosse ristes,
And therby knewe I the kyngc, pat crystnede hym semyde.
Than I went to pat wlonke, and wynly hire gretis,
And cho said, 'welcom i-wis ! wele arte thow fownden;
The aughte to wirchipe my will, and thow wele cowthe,
Of all the valyant men that *euer* was in erthe;
Fore all thy wirchipe in werre by me has thow wonnen,
I hafe bene frendely, frcke, and fremmede till *oper*;
That has *pow* fownden in faithe, and fele of pi biernez,
Fore I fellid down *sir* Frolle *with* frowarde knyghtes ;
Forethi the fruytes of Frannce are freely thynwe awen.
Thow sail *pe* chayere escheuo, I chese *pe* my selfen,
Before all *pe* cheftaynes chosen in this erthe.'
Scho lifte me vp lightly with hir lene hondes,
And sette me softely in the see, *pe* septre me rechede ;
Craftely with a kambe cho kembede myn heuede,
That the krispane kroke to my crownwe raughte ;
Dressid one me a diademe, that dighte was full faire,
And syne profres me a pome pighte full of faire stonys,
Enamelde *with* azoure, the erth thereon depayntide,
Selkylde[1] with the salte see appone sere halfes,

[1] Read Serkylde.

In sygne pat I sothely was souerayne in erthc.
Than broght cho me a brande *with* full bryghte hiltes,
And bade me brawndysche pe blade, ' pe brande as myn awen:
Many swayn -*with pe* swynge has the sw[e]tte leuede ;
For whills thow swanke with the sworde, it swykkede *pe never.'*
Than raykes cho *with* roo, and riste when hir likede,
To *pe* ryndes of *pe* wode, richere was neuer ;
Was no pomarie so pighte of pryncez in erthe,
Ne nornie apparayll so prowde, bot paradys one.
Scho bad *pe* bewes scholde bewe down, and bryng to my hondes
Of *pe* beste that they bare one brawnches so heghe ;
Than they heldede to hir heste all holly at ones,
The hegheste of iche a hirste, I hette 30W forsothe.
Scho bade me fyrthe noghte *pe* fruyte, bot fonde whills me likede,
' Fonde of *pe* fyneste, thow frelich byerne,
And reche to *pe* ripeste, and ryotto thy seluen;
Riste, thow ryalle roye, for Rome es thyn awen,
And I sail redily roll *pe* roo at pe gayneste,
And reche the *pe* riche wyne in rynsede coupes.'
Thane cho wente to *pe* welle by *pe* wode euis,
That all wellyde of wyne, and wondirliche rynnes ;
Kaughte vp a coppe-full, and coucrde it faire ;
Scho bad me dereliche drawe, and drynke to hir selfen.
And thus cho lede me abowte the lenghe of an owre,
With all likynge and luffe, fat any lede scholde ;
Bot at *pe* myddaye full ewyn all hir mode chaungede,
And mad myche manace with meruayllows wordez.
When I cryede appon hire, cho kest down hir browes :
' Kyng, thow karpes for noghte, be Criste pat me made !
For thow sail lose this layke, and thi lyfe aftyre,
Thow has lyffede in delytte and lordchippes inewe.'
Abowte scho whirles the whele, and whirles me vndire,
Till all my qwarters pat whille whare qwaste al to peces.
And with that chayere my chyne was chopped in sondire,
And I hafe cheueride for chele, sen me this chance happenede.
Than wakkenyde I i-wys, all wery fordremyde,
And now wate thow my woo, worde as *pe* lykes."
"Freke," sais the philosophre, " thy fortune es passede,

For thow sail fynd hir thi foo, frayste when the lykes!
Thow arte at pe hegheste, I hette the for-sothe,
Chalange nowe when thow will, thow cheuys no more !
Thow has schedde myche blode, and schalkes distroyede,
Sakeles, in cirquytrie, in sere kynges landis ;
Sehryfe the of thy sehame, and sehap'e for thyn ende.
Thow has a schewynge, *sir* kynge, take kepe zif the lyke,
For thow sail fersely fall within.fyve wynters.
Fownde abbayes in Frannce, pe froytez are theyn awen,
Fore Froill, and for Ferawnt, and for thir ferse knyghttis,
That thowe fremydly in Fraunce has faye beleuede ;
Take kepe zitte of *oper* kynges, and kaste in thyne herte,
That were conquerours kydde, and crownnede in erthe.
The eldeste was Alexandere, pat all pe erthe lowttede ;
The *toper* Ector of Troye, the cheualrous gnme ;
The thirde Iulyus Cesare, pat geant was holden,
In iche jorne jentill, ajuggede with lordes.
The ferthe was sir Iudas, a justere full nobill,
The maysterfull Makabee, the myghttyeste of strenghes ;
The fyfte was Iosue, pat joly mane of armes,
pat in *Jerusalem* oste full myche joye lymppede ;
The sexte was Dauid pe dere, demyd *with* kynges
One of pe doughtyeste pat dubbede was *euer,*
For he slewe with a slynge, be sleyghte of his handis,
Golyas the grette gome, grymmeste in erthe ;
Syne endittede in his dayes all the dere psalmes,
pat in *pe* sawtire ere sette with selcouthe wordes.
The two clymbande kynges, I knawe it forsothe,
Sail Karolus be callide, the kyng son of Fraunce ;
He sail be crowell and kene, and conqueror holden,
Couere be conqueste contres ynewe ;
He sail encroche the crowne that Crist bare hym selfen,
And pat lifeliche launce, that lepe to his herte,
When he was crucyfiede one crose, and all *pe* kene naylis,
Knyghtly he sail conquere to Cristyn men hondes.
The *toper* sail be Godfraye, that Gode schall reuenge
One pe Gud Frydaye with galyarde knyghtes ;
He sail of Lorrayne be lorde, be leefe of his fadire,

And syne in *lerusalem* myche joye happyn,
For he sail *coner* the crosse be craftes of armes,
And synwe be corownde kynge, with krysome enoynttede ;
Sail no duke in his dayes siche destanye happyn,
Ne siche myschefe dreghe, when trewthe sail be tryede.
Fore thy fortune pe fetches to fulfill the nowmbyre,
Alls *nynne* of pe nobileste namede in erthe ;
This sail in romance be redde *with* ryall knyghttes,
Rekkenede and renown de with *ryotous* kynges,
And demyd one domesdaye, for dedis of armes,
For *pe* doughtyeste pat *euer* was duelland in erthe :
So many clerkis and kynges sail karpe of zoure dedis,
And kepe zoure conquestez in cronycle for euer.
Bot the wolfes in tho wode, and the whilde bestes,
Are some wikkyd men that werrayes thy rewmes,
Es entirde in thyn absence to werraye thy pople,
And alyenys and ostes of vncouthe landis.
Thow getis tydandis I trowe, within ten dayes,
That some torfere es tydde, sen thow fro home turnede;
I rede thow rekkyn and reherse vnresonable dedis,
Ore the repenttes full rathe all thi rewthe werkes.
Mane, amende thy mode, or thow myshappen,
And mekely aske mercy for mede of thy saule."
Thane rysez the riche kyngtf, and rawghte on his wedys,
A reedde acton of rosse, the richeste of floures,
A pesane, and a paunson, and a pris girdill;
And one he henttis a hode of scharlette full riche,
A pauys pillion hatt, pat pighte was full faire
With perry of *pe* Oryent, and precyous stones ;
His gloues gayliche gilte, and grauen by pe hemmys,
With graynes of rubyes full gracious to schewe ;
His bede grehownde, and his bronde, ande no byerne ells,
And bownnes *oner* a brode mede, with breth at his herte ;
Furth he stalkis a stye by pa still euys,
Stotays at a hey strette, study ande hym one.
Att the surs of pe soime, he sees there commande,
Raykande to Romewarde the redyeste wayes,
A renke in a rownde cloke, with righte rowmme clothes,

With hatte, and *with* heyghe schone homely and rownde ;
With flatte ferthynges the freke was floreschede all ouer,
Manye schredys and schragges at his skyrttes hywnges,
With scrippe, ande with slawyn, and skalopis inewe,
Both pyke and palme, alls pilgram hym scholde.
The gome graythely hym grette, and bade gode morwen ;
The kyng lordelye hym selfe, of langage of Rome,
Of Latyn corroimppede all, full lonely hym menys,—
" Whedire wilnez thowe, wye, walkande thyn one ?
Qwhylls pis werlde es o werre, a wawhte I it holde ;
Here es ane enmye *with* oste, vndire 3one vynes,
And they see the, forsothe, sorowe the betyddes ;
Bot zif thow hafe condethe of pe kynge selfen,
Knaues will kill the, and keppe at thow haues ;
And if pou halde fe hey waye, they hente the also,
Bot if thow hastyly hafe helpe of his hende knyghttes."
Than karpes sïr Cradoke to the kynge selfen,
" I sail forgyffe hym my dede, so me Godo helpe.
Onye grome vndire Gode, that one this grownde walkes,
Latte the keneste come, that to pe kyng langes,
I sail encouwtire hym as knyghte, so Criste hafe my sawle !
For thow may noghte reche me, ne areste thy selfen,
poffe p*ou* be richely arayede in full riche wedys ;
I will noghte wonde for no werre, to wende whare me likes,
Ne for no wy of this werlde, pat wroghte es on erthe.
Bot I will passe in pilgremage pis pas vnto Rome,
To purchese me pardonwe of the pape selfen ;
And of paynes of purgatorie be plenerly assoyllede.
Thane sail I seke sekirly my soucrayne lorde,
Sir Arthure of Inglande, that auenawnt byerne,
For he es in this empire, as hathell men me telles,
Ostayande in this Oryente with awfuil knyghtes."
" Firo qwyn come pou, kene man," *quod pe* kynge than,
" That knawes kynge Arthure, and his knyghttes also ?
Was pou *euer* in his courte, qwylls he in kyth]engede ?
Thow karpes so kyndly, it comforthes myn herte ;
Well wele has pou wente, and wysely pou sechis,
For p*ou* arte Bretowne bierne, as by thy brode speche."

"Me awghte to knowe pe kynge, he es my kydde lorde,
And I calde in his courte a knyghte of his chambire ;
Sir Craddoke was I callide, in his courte riche,
Kepare of Karlyon vndir the kynge selfen.
Nowe am I cachede owtt of kyth, *with* kare at my herte,
And that castell es cawghte *with* vncowthe ledys."
Than the comliche kynge kaughte hym in armes,
Keste of his ketill-hatte, and kyssede hym full sone,
Saide, "welcom, *sir* Craddoke, so Criste mott me helpe !
Dere cosyn of kynde, thowe coldis myn herte,
How faris it in Bretaynne, *with* all my bolde berynns ?
Are they brettende, or brynte, or broughte owte of lyue ?
Ken pou me kyndely whatte caase es befallen ;
I kepe no credens to crafe, I knawe the for trewe."
" Sir, thi wardane es wikkede, and wilde of his dedys,
For he wandreth has wroghte, sen pou awaye passede.
He has castells encrochede, and corownde hym seluen,
Kaughte in all pe rentis of pe rownde tabill;
He devisede pe rewme, and delte as hym likes,
Dubbede of pe Danmarkes dukes and erlles,
Disseueride pem sondirwise, and cites dystroyede ;
To Sarazenes and Sessoynes, appon sere halues,
He has semblede a sorte of selcouthe berynes,
Soueraynes of Surgenale, and sowdeours many,
Of Peyghtes, and paynymms, and prouede knyghttes
Of Irelande and Orgaile, owtlawede berynes ;
All thaa laddes are knyghttes pat lange to pe mowntes,
And ledynge and lordechippe has all, alls them selfe likes.
And there es *sir* Childrike a cheftayne holdyn,
That ilke cheualrous man, he chargges thy pople ;
They robbe thy religeous, and ravische[1] thi nonnes,
And redy ryddis *with* his rowtte to rawnsone pe pouere.
Fro Humbyre to Hawyke he haldys his a wen,
And all pe cowntre' of Kentt be couenawnte entayllide ;
The comliche castells that to the corown langede,
The holttes, and the hare-wode, and the harde bankkes,
All pat Henguste and Hors hent in peire tym.

[1] **MS. ravichse. (Brock.)**

Att Southampton on the see es seuen skore chippes,
Frawghte full of ferse folke, owt offerre landes,
For to fyghte *with* thy frappe, when pow them assailles.
Bott zitt a worde witterly, thowe watte noghte pe wer.ste ;
He has weddede Waynore, and hir his wieffe holdis,
And wonnys in the wilde bowndis of pe weste marches,
And has wroghte hire with childe, as wittnesse tellis.
Off all pe wyes of }ris worlde, woo motte hym worthe,
Alls wardayne vnworthye women to zeme !
Thus has si'r Modrede merrede vs all!
Forthy I merkede oucr thees mowntes, to mene pe the sothe."
Than the burliche kynge, for brethe at his herte,
And for this botelesse bale, all his ble chaungede.
" By *pe* rode," sais p*e* roye, " I sail it revenge ;
Hym sail repente full rathe all his rewthe werkes."
All wepande for woo he went to his tentis :
Vnwynly this wyesse kynge, he wakkenysse his beryns,
Clepid in a clariouwe kynges and othire,
Callys them to concell, and of *pis* cas tellys,—
" I am *wiih* treson betrayede, for all my trewe dedis,
And all my trauayle es tynt, me tydis no bettire ;
Hym sail torfere betyde pis tresone has wroghte,
And I may traistely hym take, and I am trew lorde ;
This es Modrede, pe mane that I moste traystede,
Has my castells encrochede, and corownde hym seluen,
With renttes and reches of the rownde table ;
Has made all hys retenewys of renayede wrechis,
And devysed my rewme to dyverse lordes,
To sowdeours and to Sarazenes owtte of sere londes.
He has weddyde Waynore, and hyr to wyefe holdes,
And a childe es eschapede, the chaunce es no bettire.
They hafe semblede on the see seuen schore chippis,
Full of ferrom folke, to feghte with myn one.
Forthy to Bretayne the brode buske vs byhouys,
For to brettyn *pe* berynwe that has this bale raysede.
Thare sail no freke men fare, bott all one fresche horses,
That are fraistede in fyghte, and floure of my knyghttez :
Sir Howell and *sir* Hardolfe here sail beleue,

To be lordes of the ledis that here to me lenges ;
Lokes into Lumbardye, pat thare no lede chaunge,—
And tendirly to Tuskayne take tente alls I by de ;
Resaywe the rentis of Rome qwen fay are rekkenede ;
Take sesyn the same daye that laste was assygnede,
Or ells all pe ostage, withowttyn p*e* wallys,
Be hynggyde hye appon hyghte all holly at ones."
Nowe bownes the bolde kynge with beste knyghtes,
Gers trome and trusse, and trynes forth aftyre ;
Turnys thorowe Tuskayne, taries bot littill,
Lyghte noghte in Limbarddye bot when pe lyghte failede ;
Merkes *ouer* the mowntaynes full mervaylous wayes,
Ayres thurghe Almaygne evyne at the gayneste ;
Ferkes evynrce into Flawndresche *with* hys ferse knyghttes.
Within fyftene dayes his flete es assemblede,
And thane he schoupe hym to chippe, and schownwes no lengere,
Scherys with a charpe wynde *oner pe* schyre waters ;
By p*e* roche with ropes he rydes on ankkere.
Thare the false men fletyde, and one flode lengede,
With chefe chaynes of chare chokkode togedyrs,
Charggede evyn chekefull of cheualrous knyghtes ;
And in pe hynter one heghte, helmes and crestes,
Hatches *with* hay then men hilly d ware thare vndyre,
Prowdliche purtrayede[1] with payntede clothys,
Iche a pece by pece prykkyde tyll *oper*,
Dubbyde with dagswaynnes dowblede they seme ;
And thus pe derfe Danamarkes had dyghte all theyre chippys,
That no dynte of no darte dere them ne schoulde.
Than the roye and pe renkes of the rownde table
All ryally in rede arrayes his chippis ;
That daye ducheryes he delte, and doubbyde knyghttes,
Dresses dromowndes and dragges, and drawen vpe stonys ;
The toppe-castells he stuffede *with* toyelys, as hym lykyde,
Bendys bowes of vys brothly pareaftyre ;
Tolowris tentyly takell they ryghtten,
Brasen hedys full brode buskede one flones,
Graythes for garnyeons, gomes arrayes,

[1] MS. prutrayede. (Brock.)

Gryme gaddes of stele, gliywes of iryn,
Stirttelys[1] steryn one steryne with styffe men of armes.
Mony lufliche launce appon lofte stonndys,
Ledys one leburde, lordys and *oper*,
Pyghte payvese one porte, payntede scheldes,
One hyndire hurdace one highte helmede knyghtez.
Thus they scheften fore schotys one thas schire strandys,
like schalke in his schrowde, full scheen ware peire wedys.
The bolde kynge es in a barge and abowtte rowes,
All bare-heuvede for besye with beueryn lokkes,
And a beryn with his bronde, and ane helme betyn,
Mengede *with* a mawntelet of maylis of siluer,
Compaste *with* a coronall, and couerde[2] full riche,
Kayris to yche a cogge, to comfurthe his knyghttes :
To Clegys and Cleremownde he cryes one lowde,—
" O Gawayne ! O Galyran ! thies gud mens bodyes."
To Loth and to Lyonell full louefly he melys,
And to sir Lawncelot de Lake lordliche wordys,—
"Lat vs couere pe kythe, the coste es owre ownn,
And gere them brotheliche blenke, all zone blod-hondes,
Bryttyn them *within* bourde, and brynne them Jiare aftyre,
Hewe down hertly Jone heythen tykes !
Thay are harlotes halfe, I hette zow myn hounde ! "
Than he coueres his cogge, and caches one ankere,
Kaughte his comliche helme *with pe* clere maylis ;
Buskes baners one brode, betyn of gowles,
"With corowns of clere golde clenliche arraiede ;
Bot pare was chosen in pe chefe a chalke-whitte mayden,
And a childe in hir arme, pat chefe es of hevyne :
Withowtten changynge in chace, thies ware pe cheefe armes
Of Arthure pe auenowmt, qwhylls he in erthe lengede.
Thane the marynerse mellys, and maysters of chippis,
Merily iche a mate menys till *oper* ;
Of theire termys they talke, how pay ware tydd,
Towyn trvssell one trete, trrssen vpe sailes,
Bet bonettez one brede, bettrede hatches ;
Brawndeste brown stele, braggede in trorapes ;

[1] *Probably* stizttolys. [2] MS. couererde. (Brock.)

Standis styffe one the stamyn, steris one aftyre ;
Strekyn *oner pe* streme, thare stryvynge begynnes
Fro pe wagande wynde owte of *pe* weste rysses,
Brethly bessomes *with* byrre in beryns sailles.
With hir bryngges one burde burliche cogges,
Qwhylls *pe* bilynge and *pe* beme brestys in sondyre ;
So stowttly pe forsterne one pe stam hyttis,
pat stokkes of pe stere-burde strykkys in peces.
Be than cogge appon cogge, krayers and *oper,*
Castys crepers one crosse als to pe crafte langes.
Thane was hede-rapys hewen pat helde vpe pe niastes ;
Thare was conteke full kene, and cracliynge of chippys,
Grett cogges of kampe crasseches in sondyre,
Mony kaban clevede, cabills destroyede,
Knyghtes and kene men killide the braynes,
Kidd castells were corven *with* all theire kene wapen,
Castells full comliche, pat coloured ware faire.
Vpcynes eghelyngc pay ochen pareaftyre,
With *pe* swynge of pe swerde sweys pe mastys ;
Ovyrefallys in *pe* firste frekis and othire,
Frekke in *pe* forchipe fey es byletiefede.
Than brothely they bekyre with boustouse tacle,
Bruschese boldlye on burde brynyede knyghtes,
Owt of botes one burde was buskede with stonys,
Bett down of *pe* beste, brystis the hetches ;
Som gomys thourghegyrde[1] with gaddys of yryn,
Gomys gayliche clade englaynious wapen,
Archers of Inglande full egerly schottes,
Hittia thourghe pe harde stele full hertly dynnttis.
Sonne hotchen in holle the hefeime knyghtes,
Hurte thourghe *pe* harde stele, hele they neuer.
Than they fall to *pe* fyghte, foynes with sperys,
All the frekkeste one frowute pat to *pe* fyghte langes ;
And ilkon frechely fraystez theire strenghes,
Were to fyghte in *pe* flete *with* theire fell wapyn.
Thus they dalte pat daye, thire dubbide knyghtes,
Till all *pe* Danes ware dede, and in *pe* depe throwen.

[1] **See 1. 3208 note.**

Than Bretons brothely with brondis they hewen,
Lepys in vpone lofte lordeliche berynes ;
When ledys of owt-londys leppyn in waters,
All oure lordes one lowde laughen at ones.
Be thane speris whare spronngen, spalddyd chippys,
Spanyolis spedily sprentyde *oner* burdez ;
All pe kene men of kampe, knyghtes and oper,
Killyd are eolde dede, and castyn *ouer* burdez.
Theire swyers sweyftly has pe swete leuyde,
He pen heuande on hatclie in *per* hawe ryses,
Synkande in pe salte see seuen hundrethe at ones.
Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude, he has pe gree wonnen,
And all pe cogges grete he gafe to his knyghtes ;
Sir Geryn, and *sir* Grisswolde, and othir gret lordes,
Garte Galuth, a gud gome, girde of faire hedys.
Thus of pe false flete appon pe flode happenede,
And thus peis feryne folke fey are beleuede.
zitt es pe traytoure one londe with tryede knyghttes,
And all trompede they trippe one trappede stedys,
Schewes them vndir schilde one pe schire bankkes ;
He ne schownttes for no schame, bot schewes full hegho.
Sir Arthure and Gawayne avyede them bothen
To sexty thosandez of men, pat in theire syghte houede.
Be this the folke was fellyde, thane was p*e* flode passede ;
Thane was it slyke a slowde in slakkes full hugge,
That let pe kyng for to lande, and the lawe watyre ;
Forthy he lengede one laye for lesynng of horsesys,
To loke of his legemen, and of his lele knyghtes,
zif any ware lamede or loste, life zife they scholde.
Than sir Gawayn pe gude, a galaye he takys,
And glides vp at a gole with gud men of armes ;
When he growndide, for grefe he gyrdis in pe watere,
That to pe girdyll he gos in all his gylte wedys ;
Schottis vpe appon pe sonde in syghte of pe lordes,
Sengly *with* hys soppe, my sorowe es the more.
With baners of his bagys beste of his armes,
He braydes vpon the banke in his bryghte wedys ;
He byddys his baneoure, " buske pow belyfe

To zone brode batayle that one zone banke hones ;
And I ensure zow sothe I sail zowe sewe aftyre;
Loke ze blenke for no bronde, ne for no bryghte wapyn,
Bot beris down of pe beste and bryng them o da we ;
Bees noghte abayste of theire boste, abyde on pe erthe ;
ze hane my baneres borne in batailles full hngge ;
We sail fell zone false, pe fende hafe theire saules !
Fightes faste *with p*e frape, *pe* felde sail be owres ;
May I pat traytoure ouertake, torfere hym tyddes,
That this treson has tymbyrde to my trewe lorde ;
Of siche a engendure full littyll joye happyns,
And pat sail in this jowrnee be juggcde full euen."
Now they seke *oner p*e sonde pis soppe at pe gayneste,
Sembles one pe sowdeours, and settys theire dyntys ;
Thourgho *pe* scheldys so schene schalkes *pey* towche,
With schaftes scheueride schorte of pas schene launces ;
Derfe dynttys they dalte *with* daggande sperys ;
One pe danke of pe dewe many dede lyggys,
Dukes, and duszeperis, and dubbide knyghttys ;
The doughttyeste of Danemarke vndone are for *euer.*
Thus thas renkes in rewthe rittis their brenyes,
And rechis of pe richeste vnreken dynttis ;
Thare they thronge in the thikke, and thristis to pe erthe
Of the thraeste men thre hundrethe at ones.
Bot *sir* Gawayne for grefe myghte noghte agaynestande,
Vmbegrippys a spere, and to a gome rynnys,
pat bare of gowles full gaye, *with* gowces[1] of syluere ;
He gyrdes hym in at pe gorge *with* his grym launce
pat pe grownden glayfe graythes in sondyre ;
With pat boystous brayde he bownes hym to dye.
pe kynge of Gutlande it was, a gude man of armes.
Thayre avawwarde than all voydes pareaftyre,
Alls venqueste verrayely *with* valyant beryns ;
Metis *with* medilwarde, that Modrede ledys.
Oure men merkes them to, as them myshappenede—
For hade *sir* Gawayne hade grace to halde pe grene hill,
He had wirchipe i-wys worainen for *euer.*

[1] *Or* gowtes. (Brock.)

Bot pan *sir* Gawayne i-wysse, he waytes hym wele
To wreke hym on this werlaughe, *pat p*is werre mouede ;
And merkes to *sir* Modrede amonge all his beryns,
With the Mownttagus, and *oper* gret lordys.
pan *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and *with* a gret wyll
Fewters a faire spere, and freschely askryes,—
" Fals fosterde foode, the fende haue thy bonys !
Fy one the, felone, and thy false werkys !
Thow sall be dede and vndon for thy derfe dedys,
Or I sail dy this daye, zif destanye worthe ! "
Thane his enmye, with oste of owtlawede beryns,
All enangylls abowte oure excellente knyghttez,
That the traytoiwe be tresone had tryede hym seluen ;
Dukes of Danemarke he dyghttes full sone,
And leders of Lettowe, with legyons inewe,
Vmbylappyde oure men with launcez full kene,
Sowdeours and Sarazenes owte of sere landys,
Sexty thosande men semlyly arrayede,
Sekerly assembles thare one seuenschore knyghtes,
Sodaynly in dischayte by tha salte strandes.
Thane *sir* Gawayne grette with his gray eghen,
For grefe of his gud men that he gyde schulde ;
He wyste that]pay wondyde ware, and wery forfoughtten ;
And what for wondire and woo, all his witte faylede.
And thane syghande he saide, *"with* sylande terys,—
" We are with Sarazenes besett appon sere halfes !
I syghe noghte for my selfe, sa helpe oure Lorde;
Bot for to [see] vs supprysede, my sorowe es the more.
Bes dowghtty todaye, zone dukes schall be zoures !
For dere Dryghttyn this daye, dredys no wapyn.
We sall ende this daye alls excellent knyghttes,
Ay ere to endelesse joye with angells vnwemmyde.
pofe we hafe vnwittyly wastede oure selfen,
We sail wirke all wele in *pe* wirchipe of Cryste.
We sail for zone Sarazenes, I sekire zow my trowhe,
Souppe *with* oure Saueoure solemply in heuen,
In presence of fat precious, prynce of all *oper*
With prophetes, and patriarkes, and apostlys full nobill,

Before his freliche face that fourmede vs all.
zondire to zone Jaldsons, he pat zeldes hym *euer,*
Qwhylls he es qwykke and in qwerte vnquellyde *with* handis,
Be he neuer mo sauede, ne socowrede *with* Cryste,
Bot Satanase his sawle mowe synke into helle ! "
Than grymly *sir* Gawayne gryppis hys wapyn,
Agayne pat gret bataille he graythes hym son ;
Radly of his riche swerde he reghttes *pe* cheynys,
In he schokkes his schelde, schoiuites he no lengare ;
Bot alls vnwyse, wodewyse, he wente at *pe* gayneste,
Wondis of thas wedirwyns *tvith* wrakfull dynttys,
All wellys full of blode, thare he awaye passes ;
And pofe hym ware full woo, he wondys bot lyttill,
Bot wrekys at his wirchipe *pe* wrethe of hys lorde.
He stekys stedis in stoure, and sterenefull knyghttes,
That steryn men in theire sterapes stone-dede pay lygge ;
He ryvys *pe* ranke stele, lie rittes *pe* mayles ;
Thare myghte no renke hym areste, his reson was passede.
He fell in a fransye for fersenesse of herte,
He feghttis and i'ellis down pat hym before standis.
Fell *neuer* fay man siche fortune in erthe.
Into pe hale bataile hedlyngs he rywnys,
And hurtes of pe hardieste pat one the erthe lenges ;
Letande alls a lyon, he lawnches them thorowe,
Lordes and ledars, that one the launde houes.
zit *sir* Gawayne for wo wondis bot lyttill,
Bot woundis of thas wedirwyns *with* wondirfull dyntes,
Alls he pat wold wilfully wasten hym selfen ;
And for wondsom and will all his wit failede,
That wode alls a wylde beste he wente at pe gayneste;
All walewede one blode, thare he awaye passede ;
Iche a wy may be wane, be wreke of anojxsr.
Pan he moues to sir Modrede amange all his knyghttes,
And mett hym in *pe* myde schelde, and mallis hym thorowe ;
Bot the schalke for the scharpe he schownttes a littill,
He schare hym one *pe* schorte rybbys a schaftmonde large.
The schafte schoderede and schotte in the schire beryn,
pat *pe* schadande blodeoucr his schanke rynnys,

And schewede on his schynbawde, pat was schire bumeste.
And so they schyfte and schove, he schotte to pe er the ;
With pe lussche of pe launce he lyghte one hys schuldyrs,
Ane akere lenghe one a launde, full lothely wondide.
Than Gawayne gyrde to pe gome, and one pe groffe fallis ;
Alls his grefe was graythede, his grace was no bettyre.
He schokkes owtte a schorte knyfe schethede with siluere,
And scliolde haue slottede hym in, bot no slytte happen ede ;
His hand sleppid and slode o slante one pe mayles,
And pe *toper* slely slynges hym vndire :
With a trenchande knyfe the traytoure hym hyttes,
Thorowe pe helme and pe hede, one heyghe one p*e* brayne:
And thus *sir* Gawayne es gon, tlie glide man of armes,
Withowttyn reschewe of renke, and rewghe es pe more !
Thus *sir* Gawaynne es gon, that gyede many othire ;
Fro Gowere to Gernesay, all *pe* gret lordys
Of Glamour, of Galys londe, pis galyarde knyghtes,
For glent of gloppynyng[1] glade be they neuer !
Kyng Froderike of Fres faythely pare aftyre,
Fraynes at the false mane of owre ferse knyghte ;
"Knew thow *eacr* this knyghte in thi kithe ryche ?
Of whate kynde he was comen, beknowe now pe sothe ;
Qwat gome was he this *with* the gaye armes,
With Jris gryffouwe of golde, pat es one growffe fallyn ?
He has grettly greffede vs, sa me Gode helpe !
Gyrde down oure gude men, and greuede vs sore.
He was pe sterynneste in stoure that *ener* stele werryde,
For he has stonayede oure stale, and stroyede for ciur."
Than *sir* Mordrede *with* mouthe melis full faire ;
"He was makles one molde, mane, be my trowhe ;
This was *sir* Gawayne the gude, pe gladdeste of othire,
And the graciouseste gome that vndire God lyffede,
Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes,
And pe hendeste in hawle vndire heuen riche ;
pe lordelieste of ledynge qwhylls he lyffe myghte,
Fore he was lyone allossede in londes inewe ;
Had thow knawen hym, *sir* kynge, in kythe thare he lengede,

[1] MS. gloppyngnyng. (Brock.)

His konynge, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes,
His doyng, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes,
Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede pe dayes of thy lyfe."
zit *pat* traytowr alls tite teris lete he fall,
Turnes hym ftirthe tite, and talkes no more,
Went wepand awaye, and weries the stowndys,
pat euer his werdes ware wroghte siche wandrethe to wyrke :
Whene he thoghte on pis thynge, it thirllede his herte.
For sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys ;
When *pat* renayede renke remembirde hym seluen,
Of reuerence and ryotes of *pe* rownde table,
He remyd and repent hym of all his rewthe werkes,
Rode awaye with his rowte, ristys he no lengore,
For rade of oure riche kynge, ryve pat he scholde.
Thane kayres he to Cornewaile, carefull in herte,
Because of his kynsemane that one the coste ligges :
He taries tremlande ay, tydandis to herken.
Than the traytowe treuntede pe Tyseday paraftyre,
Trynnys in *with* a trayne treson to wirke,
And by *pe* Tambire pat tide his tentis he reris,
And thane in a mette-while a messangere he sendes,
And wraite vnto Waynor how the werlde chaungede,
And what comliche coste the kyng was aryuede,
One floode foughten *with* his fleete, and fellyd them o lyfe ;
Bade hir ferken oo ferre, and flee with hir childire,
Whills he myghte wile hym awaye, and wyn to hir speche,
Ayere into Irelande, into pas owte-mowntes,
And wonn thare in wildernesse *within p*a wast landys.
Than cho Jermys and zee at zorke in hir chambire,
Gronys full grysely *with* gretand teres,
Passes owte of *pe* palesse *with* all hir pryce maydenys ;
Towarde Chestyre in a charre thay chese hir *pe* wayes,
Dighte hir ewyn for to dye *with* dule at hir herte.
Scho kayres to Karelyone, and kawghte hir a vaile,
Askes thare *pa* habite in *pe* honoure of Criste,
And all for falsede, and frawde, and fere of hir louerde.
Bot whene oure wiese kynge wiste *pat* Gawayne was landede,
He al towrythes for woo, and wryngande his handes,

Gers lawnche his botes appon a lawe watire,
Londis als a lyon *with* lordliche knyghtes,
Slippes in in the sloppes o slante to ÞÞe girdyll,
Swalters vpe swyftly with his swerde drawen,
Bownnys his bataile and baners displayes,
Buskes *ower pe* brode sandes *with* breth at his herte,
Ferkes frekkly one felde *pare pe* feye lygges.
Of the traytowrs men one trappede stedis,
Ten thosandez ware tynte, pe trewghe to acownt,
And certane on owre syde seuen score knyghtes
In soyte *with* theire souerayne vnsownde are beleuede.
Þe kynge comly outfrkeste knyghtes and othire,
Erlles of Awfrike, and Estriche borynes
Of Orgaile and Orekenay, *pe* Iresche kynges,
The nobileste of Norwaye, nowmbirs full hugge,
Dukes of Danamarke, and dubbid knyghtes ;
And the guchede kynge in the gay armes
Lys gronande on pe growimde, and girde thorowe even.
The riche kynge ransakes with rewthe of his herte,
And vp rypes the renkes of all *pe* rownde tabyll ;
Ses them all in a soppe in sowte by them one,
With *pe* Sarazenes vnsownde enserchede abowte ;
And *sir* Gawayne the gude in his gaye armes,
Vmbegrippede the girse, and one grouffe fallen,
His baners brayden down, betyn of gowlles,
His brand and his brade schelde al blody beronen ;
Was *newer* oure semliche kynge so sorowfull in herte,
Ne pat sanke hym so sade, bot *pat* sighte one.
Than gliftis *pe* gud kynge, and glopyns in herte,
Gronys full grisely *with* gretande teris ;
Knelis down to *pe* cors, and kaught it in armes,
Kastys vpe his vmbrere, and kyssis hym sone,
Lokes one his eye-liddis, pat lowkkide ware faire,
His lippis like to *pe* lede, and his lire falowede.
pan the corownde kyng cryes full low de,—
" Dere kosyn o kynde, in kare am I leuede,
For nowe my wirchipe es wente, and my were endide.
Here es pe hope of my hele, my happynge of armes,

My herte and my hardynes hale one hym lengede,
My concell, my comforthe, pat kepide myn herte !
Of all knyghtes pe kynge pat vndir Criste lifede,
pou was worthy to be kyngtf, pofe I pe corown bare,
My wele and my wirchipe of all pis werlde riche
Was wonnen thourghe sir Gawayne, & thourghe his witt one !
Alias ! " saide *sir* Arthure, " nowe ekys my sorowe !
I am vttirly vndon in myn awen landes ;
A ! dowttouse derfe dede, pou duellis to longe !
Why drawos pou so one dreghe ? thow drownnes myn herte ! "
Than swe[l]tes the swete kyng and in swoun fallis,
Swafres vp swiftely, and swetly hym kysses,
Till his burliche berde was blody berown,
Alls he had.bestes birtenede, and broghte owt of life ;
Ne had sir Ewayne comen, and otliire grete lordys,
His bolde herte had brousten for bale at pat stownde.
" Blyne'sais thies bolde men, " thow blondirs p*i* selfen,
pis es botles bale, for bettir bees it neuer.
It es no wirchipe i-wysse to wryng thyn hondes ;
To wepe als a woman it es no witt holden.
Be knyghtly of contenwmce, als a kyng scholde,
And leue siche clamoure for Cristes lufe of heuen !"
" For Mode," said the bolde kynge, " blyn sail I neuer,
Or my brayne tobriste, or my breste *oper,*
Was *newer* sorowe so softe that sanke to my herte.
Itt es full sibb to my selfe, my sorowe es the more ;
Was *nener* so sorowfull a syghte seyn *with* myn eyghen,
He es sakles supprysede for syn of myn one ! "
Down knelis pe *kynge,* and kryes full lowde ;
With carefull contentw-nce he karpes thes wordes,—
"O rightwis riche Gode, this rewthe thow beholde !
pis ryall rede blode ryn appon ertho,
It ware worthy to be schrede and schrynede in golde,
For it es sakles of syn, sa helpe me oure Lorde !"
Down knelis pe kyng *with* kare at his herte,
Kaughte it vpe kyndly *with* his clene handis,
Keste it in a ketill-hatte, and coucrde it faire,
And kayres furthe *with p*e cors in kyhte pare he lenges.

" Here I make myn avowe," quod the kynge than,
- " To Messie, and to Marie, the mylde qwenwe of heuen,
I sail neuer ryvaye, ne racches vncowpyll
At roo ne rayne-dere, pat rynnes apponwe erthe ;
Neucr grewhownde late glyde, ne gossehawke latt flye,
Ne *neuer* fowle see fellide, pat fiieghes *with* wenge ;
Fawkon ne formaylle appon fiste handill,
Ne zitt *with* gerefawcon rejoyse me in erthe ;
Ne regnne in my royaltez, ne halde my rownde table,
Till thi dede, my dere, be dewly reuengede ;
Bot *eucr* droupe and dare, qwylls my lyfe lastez,
Till Drighten and derfe dede hafe don qwate them likes."
Than kaughte they vpe pe cors *with* kare at theire hertes,
Karyed[1] one a coursere with *pe* kynge selfen ;
The waye vnto Wynchestre pay wente at the gayneste,
Wery and wandsomdly, *with* wondide knyghtes.
Thare come pe prior of pe plas, and professide monnkes,
Apas in processione, and *with* the prynce metys,
And he betuke pam the cors of pe knyghte noble.
" Lokis it be clenly kepyd," he said, " and in *po* kirke holden,
Done for derygese, as to pe ded fallys,
Menskede *with* messes, for mede of pe saule :
Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe ells,
And at pe body be bawmede, and one erthe holden,
ziff pou kepe thi couent encroche any wirchipe
At my comyng agayne, zif Crist will it thole ;
Abyde of *pe* beryenge till they be broughte vndire,
pat has wroghte vs this woo, and *pis* werre niouede."
Pan sais *sir* Wychere *pe* wy, a wyese mane of armes ;
"Trede ze warely wende, and wirkes the beste ;
Soiorne in this cetế, and semble thi berynes,
And bidde *with* thi bolde men in thi burghe riche ;
Get owt knyghttez of contres, that castells holdes,
And owt of garysons grete gude men of armes,
For we are faithely to fewe to feghte *with* them all,
pat we see in his sorte appon pe see bankes."
With krewell contenance thane the kyng karpis theis wordes,—

[1] The MS. has a hole here.

" I praye the kare noghte, sir knyghte, ne caste fou no dredis
Hadde I no segge bot my selfe one vndir sone,
And I may hym see *with* sighte, or one hym sette hondis
I sall even amange his mene inalle hym to dede,
Are I of pe stede styre halfe a stede lenghe.
I sail [stryke] hym in his stowre, and stroye hym for euer,
And thareto make I myn avowe devottly to Cryste,
And to hys modyre Marie, f e mylde qvvene of heuen.
I sall *newer* soiowne sounde, ne sawghte at myne herte,
In cete ne in subarbe sette appon erthe,
Ne zitt slomyre ne slepe *with* my slawe eyghne,
Till he be slayne fat hym slowghe, zif any .sleyghte happen :
Bot *eucr* pursue the payganys *put* my pople distroyede,
Qwylls I may pare them and pynne, in place fare me likes."
Thare durste no renke hym areste of all pe rownde table,
Ne none paye fat prynce *with* plesande wordes,
Ne none of his ligemene hike hym in the eyghne,
So lordely he lakes for losse of his knyghttes.
Thane drawes he to Dorsett, and dreches no langere,
Derefull dredlesse with drowppande teris ;
Kayeris into Kornewayle with kare at his herte,
The trays of fe traytoure he trynys full euemie ;
And turnys in be pe *Treyntis* fe traytowre to seche,
Fyndis hym in a foreste fe Fryday e thereaftire ;
The kyng lyghttes one fott, and freschely askryes,
And *with* his freliche folke he has f e feldo nowtmeii.
Now isschewis his enmye vndire f e wode eyuys,
With ostes of alynes full horrebill to schewe.
Sir Mordrede the Malebranche, *with* his myche pople,
Foundes owt of the foreste appon fele halfes,
In seuen grett batailles semliche arrayede,
Sexty thowsande men ; the syghte was full hugge,
All fyghtande folke of f e ferre laundes,
Faire fettede one frownte be tha fresche strondes.
And all Arthurs oste was amede *with* knyghtes
Bot awghtene hundrethe of all, entrede in rolles ;
This was a mache vnmete, bot myghttis of Criste,
To melle *with* fat multitude in fase man londis.

Than the royall roy of pe rownde table
Rydes one a riche stede, arrayes his beiyns,
Buskes his avawmwarde, als hym beste likes ;
Sir Ewayne, and *sir* Errake, and othire gret lordes,
Demenys the medilwarde nienskefully thareaftyre,
With Merrake and Menyduke, niyghtty of strenghos ;
Idirous and Alymere, pire auenimnt children,
Ayers *with* Arthure, *with* seuen score of knyghtes ;
He rewlis p*e* rerewarde redyly thareaftyre,
The rekeneste redy men of pe rownde table,
And thus he fittis his folke, aod freschely askryes,
And syen comforthes his men *with* knyghtlyche wordes—
" I beseke zow, sirs, for sake of oure Lorde,
That ze doo wele todaye, and dredis no wapen.
Fighttes fersely nowe, and fendis zoure seluen,
Fellis down zone feye folke, the felde sail be owrs ;
They are Sarazenes zone sorte, vnsownde motte they worthe !
Sett one them sadlye, for sake of oure Lorde ;
zif vs be destaynede to dy todaye one this erthe,
We sall be hewede vnto heuen, or we be halfe colde.
Loke ze lett for no lede lordly to wirche ;
Layes zone laddes lowe be the layke ende.
Take no tente vnto me, ne tale of me rekke,
Bes besy one my baners *with* zoure brighte wapyns,
That they be strenghely stuffede *with* steryn knyghtes,
And holden lordly one lofte ledys to schewe ;
zife any renke them arase, reschowe them sone.
Wirkes now my wirchipe, todaye my werre endys,
ze wotte my wele and my woo, wirkkys as zow likys.
Crist comly *with* crown comforthe zow all,
For pe kyndeste creatowrs that *ener* kynge ledde !
I gyffe zow all my blyssyng *with* a blithe will,
And all Bretowns bolde, blythe mote ze worthe ! "
They pype vpe at pryme tyme, approches them nere,
Pris men and priste proues theire strenghes ;
Bremly the brethemen bragges in troumppes,
In cornettes comlyly, when knyghttes assembles,
And thane jolyly enjoynys peis jentyll knyghttes ;

A jolyere journe ajuggede was neuer,
Whene Bretons boldly enbraces theire scheldes,
And Cristyn encroyssede them, and castis in fewtire.
pan *air* Arthure oste his enmye askryes,
" And in they schokke theire scheldes, schontes no lengare;
Schotte to pe schiltrons, and schowttes full heghe,
Thorowe scheldis full schene schalkes they touche.
Redily thas rydde men of the rownde table
Wit/i ryall raunke stele rittys theire mayles;
Bryneys browdden they briste, and burneste helmys,
Hewes hay then men down, halses in sondre.
Fyghtande *with* fyne stele, pe feye blod rynnys,
Of pe frekkeste of frounte vnfers ere belevede.
Ethyns of Argayle and Irische kynges
Enverounes oure avawmwardo *with* venywtmos berynws :
Peghttes and paynymes *with* perilous wapyns,
"*With* speres disspetousely disspoylles oure knyghttes,
And hewede down the hendeste *with* hertly dynttys ;
Thorow the holle batayle they holden theire wayes.
pus fersly they fyghte appon sere halfes,
That of *pe* bolde Bretons myche blode spillis,
Thare durste non rescowe them, for reches in erthe,
pe steryn ware pare so stedde, and stuffede wit[h] othire :
He durste noghte stire a steppe, bot stodde for hym seluen,
Till thre stalis ware stroyede be strenghe of hym one.
" Idrous," *quod* Arthure, " ayre the byhoues !
I see sir Ewayne ouersette with Sarazenes kene ;
Redy the for rescows, arraye thee sone I
Hye pe with hardy men in helpe of thy fadire !
Sett in one the syde, and socoure zone lordes ;
Bot they be socourrede and sownde, vnsawghte be I neuer ! "
Idrous hym ansuers ernestly pareaftyre,—
" He es my fadire in fait he, forsake sail I *neuer*,
He has me fosterde and fedde, and my faire bretheren,
Bot I forsake this gate, so me Gode helpe,
And sothely all sybredyn bot thy selfe one.
I breke neuer his biddyngg for beryn one lyfe,
Bot euer bouxvm as beste blethely to wyrke.

He commande me kyndly, *with* knyghtly wordes,
That I schulde lelely one *pe* lenge, and one noo lede ells;
I sail hys cowmandement holde, zif Criste wil me thole.
He es eldare than I, and endo sail we bo then,
He sail ferkke before, and I sail come aftyre :
ziffe him be destaynede to dy todaye one pis erthe,
Criste comly *with* crown take kepe to hys saule ! "
Pan remys the riche kynge *with* rowthe at his herte,
Hewys hys handys one heghte, and to pe heuen lokes,—
" Qwythen hade Dryghttyn destaynede at his dere will,
pat he hade demyd me todaye to dy for zow all !
That had I leucr than be lorde all my lyfe tyme,
Off all pat Alexandere aughte qwhills he in erthe lengede."
Sir Ewayne and *sir* Errake, *pes* excellente beryns,
Enters in one *pe* oste, and egerly strykes ;
The ethenys of Orkkenaye and Irische kynges,
pay gobone of *pe* gretteste *with* growndene swerdes,
Hewes one pas hulkes *with* peire harde wapyns,
Layed down pas ledes *with* lothely dynttys ;
Schuldirs and scheldys pay schrede to pe hawnches,
And medills thourghe mayles pay merken in son dire.
Siche honoure neucr aughte none erthely kyng
At theire endyng daye, hot Arthure hym seluen.
So *pe* droughte of *pe* daye dryede theire hertes
That bothe drynkles they dye, dole was pe more :
Now mellys oure medill-warde, and mengen togedire.
Sir Mordrede *pe* Malebrauche *with* his myche pople,
He had hide hym behynde within thas holte eyuys,
With halle bataile on hethe, harme es *pe* more.
He hade sene pe conteke al clene to pe ende,
How oure cheualrye cheuyde be chaunces of armes,
He wiste oure folke was forfoughtten, *pat* pare was feye leuede,
To encowntere *pe* kynge he castes hym sone.
Bot the churles chekyn hade chaungyde his armes ;
He had sothely forsaken *pe* sawturoure engrelede,
And laughte vpe thre lyons all of whitte siluyre,
Passande in purpre of perrie full riche,
For *pe* kynge sulde noghte knawe *pe* cawtelous wriche.

Because of his cowardys he keste of his atyre ;
Bot the comliche kyng knewe hym full swythe,
Karpis to *sir* Cadors *pes* kyndly wordez,—
" I see pe traytou*re* come zondyr trynande full zerne ;
zone ladde *with pe* lyones es like to hym selfen.
Hym sail torfere betyde, may I touche ones,
For all his treson and trayne, alls I am trew lorde !
Today Clarente and Caliburne sail kythe them togedirs,
Whilke es kenere of kerfe, or hardare of eghge ;
Fraiste sail we fyne stele appone fyne wedis.
Itt was my derlyngc daynteuous, and full dere holden,
Kepede fore encorownmentes of kynges enoynttede ;
One dayes when I dubbyde dukkes and erlles,
It was burliche borne be pe bryghte hiltes ;
I durste *neuer* dere it in dedis of armes,
Bot euer kepide clene, because of my seluen.
For I see Clarent vnclede, pat crowne es of swerdes,
My wardrop of Walyngfordhe I wate es distroyede ;
Wist no wy of wone bot Waynor hir seluen,
Scho hede *pe* kepynge hir selfe of pat kydde wapyn,
Off cofres enclosede pat to *pe* crown lengede,
With rynges and relikkes, and *pe* regale of Fraunce,
That was fownden on sir Froll, when he was feye leuyde."
Than sir Marrike in malyncoly metys hym sone,
With a mellyd mace myghtyly hym strykes ;
The bordoure of his bacenett he bristes in sondire,
paz pe schire rede blode *oner* his brene rynnys.
The beryn blenkes for bale, and all his ble chaunges,
Bot zitt he byddys as a bore, and brymly he strykes.
He braydes owte a brande bryghte als *euer* ony syluer,
pat was *sir* Arthure awen, and Vtere his fadirs,
In the wardrop of Walyngfordhe was wonte to be kepede ;
parewith pe derfe dogge syche dynttes he rechede,
pe toper withdrewe one dreghe and durste do non *oper;*
For *sir* Marrake was man merrede in elde,
And *sir* Mordrede was myghty, and [in] his moste strenghis ;
Come non wit/tin *pe* compas, knyghte ne non *oper,*
*Within p*e swyng of swerde, *pat* ne he pe swete leuyd.

pat persayfes oure prynce, and presses to faste,
Strykes into pe stowre by strenghe of hys handis,
Metis *with sir* Mordrede, he melis vnfaire,—
" Turne, traytoure vntrewe, *pe* tydya no bettyre ;
Be gret Gode, thovv sail dy *with* dynt of my handys !
The schall rescowe no renke ne reehes in er the ! "
The kyng *with* Calaburn knyghtly hym strykes,
pe cantell of *pe* clere schelde he kerfes in sondyre,
Into pe schuldyre of pe schalke a schaftmonde large,
pat *pe* schire rede blode schwede one *pe* maylys.
He schodirde and schrenkys, and sehontes bott lyttill,
Bott schokkes in scharpely in his schene wedys ;
The felone *with pe* fyn swerde freschely he strykes,
The felettes of *pe* ferrere syde he flasscheS in sondyre,
Thorowe jopown and jcsserawnte of gentill mailes.
The freke fichede~in *pe* flesche an halfe fotte large ;
That derfe dynt was his dede, and dole was *pe* more
That *ewer p*at doughtty sulde dy, bot at Dryghttyns wyll.
zitt *with* Calyburn his swerde, full knyglittly he strykea,
Kastes in his clere schelde, and coucres hym full faire ;
Swappes of pe swerde hande, als he by glentes,
Ane inche fro *pe* elbowe, he ochede it in sondyre,
pat he swounnes one *pe* swarthe,[1] and one swym fallis,
Thorowe bracer[2] of brown stele, and pe bryghte mayles,
That the hilte and *pe* hande appon *pe* hethe ligges.
Thane frescheliche pe freke the fente vpe rererys,
Brochis hym in with the bronde to pe bryghte hiltys,
And he brawles one the bronde, and bownes to dye.
" I n faye," says *pe* feye kynge, "sore me forthynkkes
That *euer* siche a false theefe so faire an ende haues."
Qwen they had fenyste pis feghte, thane was *pe* felde wonnen,
And the false folke in *pe* felde feye are byleuede.
Till a foreste they fledde, and fell in the greuys,
And fers feghtande folke folowes them aftyre ;
Howntes and hewes down the heythen tykes,
Mourtherys in the mowntaygnes *sir* Mordrede knyghtes;
Thare chapyde neucr no childe, cheftayne ne *oper*,

[1] MS. swrathe. (Brock.) [2] MS. brakr. (Brock.)

Bot choppes them down in the chace, it cliargys bot litty ll.
Bot when *sir* Arthure anon *sir* Ewayne he fyndys,
And Errake *pe* auenawnt, and *oper* grett lordes,
He kawghte vp *sir* Cador with care at his herte,
Sir Clegis, *sir* Cleremonde, *pes* clere men of armes,
Sir Lothe, and sir Lyonell, sir Lawncelott, and Lowes,
Marrake and Meneduke, pat myghty ware *euer;*
With langoure in the launde thare he layes them togedire,
Lokede on theyre lighames, and *with* a lowde steuen,
Alls lede pat liste noghte lyfe and loste had his myrthis.
Then he stotays for made, and all his strenghe faylez,
Lokes vpe to pe lyfte, and all his lyre chaunges,
Downne he sweys full swythe, and in a swoun fallys,
Vpe he coueris one kneys, and kryes full often,—
" Kyng comly *with* crowne, in care am I leuyde ;
All my lordchipe lawe in lande es layde vndyre !
That me has gyfen gwerdons, be grace of hym seluen,
Mayntenyde my manhede be myghte of theire handes,
Made me manly one molde, and mayster in erthe;
In a tenefull tym this torfere was rereryde,
That for a traytoure has tynte all my trewe lordys.
Here rystys the riche blude of the rownde table,
Rebukkede *with* a rebawde, and rewthe es the more !
I may helples one hethe house be myn one,
Alls a wafull wedowe pat wanttes hir beryn.
I may werye and wepe, and wrynge myn handys,
For my wytt and my wyrchipe awaye es for *euer.*
Off all lordchips I take leue to myn ende ;
Here es *pe* Bretons blode broughte owt of lyfe,
And nowe in pis jownee all my joy endys."
Thane relyes pe renkes of all pe rownde table,
To pe ryall roy thay ride pam all;
Than assembles full sone seuen score knyghtes,
In sighte to paire souerayne, pat was vnsownde leuede.
Than knelis the crownede kynge, and kryes one lowde,—
" I thanke pe, Gode, of thy grace, *with* a gud wyll,
That gafe vs vertue and witt to vencows pis beryns ;
And vs has grauntede *pe* gree of theis gret lordes !

He sent vs neucr no schame, ne schenchipe in erthe,
Bot euer zit pe ouerhande of all *oper* kynges:
We hafe no laysere now pese lordys to seke,
For zone laythely ladde me lamede so sore.
Graythe vs to Glaschenbery, vs gaynes non *oper* ;
Thare we may ryste vs *with* roo, and raunsake oure wondys.
Of pis dere day werke, p*e* Dryghtten be louedi,
That vs has destaynede and demyd to dye in oure a wen."
Thane they holde at his heste hally at ones,
And graythes to Glasschenberye p*e* gate at pe gayneste ;
Entres *pe Il*e of Aueloyne, and Arthure he lyghttes,
Merkes to a manere there, for myghte he no forthire.
A surgyn[2] of Salerne enserches his wondes,
The kyng sees be asaye pat sownde bese he neuer,
And sone to his sekire men he said theis wordes,—
" Doo calle me a confessour-, with Criste in his armes ,
I will be howselde in haste, whate happe so betyddys ;
Constantyn my eosyn he sail the corown here,
Alls becommys hym of kynde, zife Criste will hym thole.
Beryn, fore my benyson, thowe berye 3one lordys,
That in baytaille with brondez are broghte owte of lyfe ;
And sythen merke manly to Mordrede children,
That they bee sleyghely slayne, and slongen in watyrs ;
Latt no wykkyde wede waxe, ne wrythe one this erthe ;
I warne fore thy wirchipe, wirke alls I bydde !
I foregyffe all greffe, for Cristez lufe of heuen,
zife Waynor hafe wele wroghte, wele hir betydde ! "
He saide *In manus* with mayne one molde whare he ligges,
And thus passes his speryt, and spekes he no more.
The baronage of Bretayne thane, beehopes and othire,
Graythes them to Glaschenbery *with* gloppynnande hertes,
To bery thare the bolde kynge, and brynge to pe erthe,
"With all wirchipe and welthe pat any wy scholde.
Throly belles thay rynge, and *Requiem* syngys,
Dosse messes and matyns *with* mournande notes :
Relygeoua reueste in theire riche copes,
Pontyficalles and prelates in precyouse wedys,

[1] MS. stisgyn. (Brock.)

Dukes and dusszeperis in theire dule-cotes,
Cowntasses knelande and claspande theire handes,
Ladys languessande and lowrande to schewe ;
All was buskede in blake, birdes and othire,
That schewede at the sepulture, wit/i- sylande teris ;
Whas neuer so sorowfull a syghte seen in theire tym !
Thus endis kyng Arthure, as auctors alegges,
That was of Ectores blude, the kynge son of Troye,
And of *sir* Pryamows, the prynce, praysede in erthe ;
Fro thethyn broghte the Bretons all his bolde eldyrs
Into Bretayne the brode, as *pe* Bruytte tellys.

et c explicit.

Hic jacct Arthurus, rex q[u]ondam rex que futurus.

*exe endes M*orte Arthure, *w*riten by Robert of Chornton.

B Chornton dictus q*ui* scripsit sit *benedictus. Amen !*

PART II

INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY

PREFACE

A FEW words of acknowledgment must accompany this edition of the alliterative *Morte Arthure.* It could never have been undertaken without the help of other editions of early English texts and the various dictionaries now within reach of students. Thanks are specially due to the Early English Text Society's series, to the articles on early English literature in *Anglia* and *Englische Studien,* to the *New English Dictionary,* the *Dialect Dictionary,* Mätzner's *Middle-English Dictionary,* and Jamieson's *Scottish Dictionary.* Grateful acknowledgment is also due to the stimulus of lectures on Mediaeval literature at University College, London, and of Professor Napier's courses on English language at Oxford. Much is owing in the Notes to the kind suggestions of Professor Ker, and hints from Professor Napier on the subjects of English MSS., and glossaries have gone far to clear away some of the difficulties of this text.

INTRODUCTION

i.—THE POEM.

THE M*orte Arthure* is an outcome of the alliterative revival of the fourteenth century, and has many features in common with other poems of its time. It bears certain very definite resemblances to products of the courtly school, such as its machinery of dreams and allegory, its glory of jewels, glowing colour and princely splendour, its long lists of things delightful to medieval ears, of courtiers, kings and banquetings, and its conventions, tributes to smiling meadows, streams, and birds of song. But its resemblances to the poems of the revival are closer, more firmly wrought into the texture of the work; they embrace many of its special excellences.

Like the other alliterative poems it is written in the metre of Old English poetry, and contributes to one of the artistic phenomena of history. Like them, too, it marks a movement which has a value beyond that of its artistic form. For the revival of the old heroic line was a thing which stirred the hearts of poets at an hour of national quickening, and beat true to a pulse strengthened by consciousness of power in the people at large. It is as significant of the time as Wiclif's sermons or any of the social and political changes reflected in legislation of those years. It was not a mere literary affectation. What remains of it is written chiefly in dialects of the North and West, where tradition might well be vigorous, but where scholarly trifling would be least in vogue. It was rejected by the courtly poets, and by the master Chaucer, whose artistic making bears the stamp of foreign ideals, and it was cherished by Langland, who wrote for the people, studying their methods, and by the authors of the popular drama, where literary eccentricities would have been out of place if not impossible.

Recognition for the verse-forms of our forefathers may spring to-day from the wider humanism which is our dower, but we may doubt whether the Humanism of Europe in the time of the second and third Edwards would have listened to alliterative poetry, even if the influence of that urbane spirit could have penetrated to the borders of Logres. The thunder-tones of the old gods had been too lately silenced, the philosophic debate of the schools was not disposed to pause for a retrospect across the years of strife. Not to schools or courts need we look for the explanation of the revival of native art, but rather to an impulse engendered of the national mood, which led poets to the adoption of a form of verse known to the people and alive in familiar versions of the songs of more adventurous days.

The metre[1] of these poems is modelled, not on the original typo, but on the alliterative line as it revealed itself to ears fast losing the sense of inflectional syllables, and transformed by the shortening, lengthening and slurring of sounds which altered their values for stress ; it has every sign of study of contemporary forms, and the many variations from the earlier pattern which four hundred intervening years of linguistic change had brought. Here and there we are surprised and startled by alliterative phrases which are like echoes from the older poets of a kind not found in the rhyming romances, but there is little evidence that the style of Old English poetry had been studied in connection with them. We find few traces of the spirit of the older epic in the style of these later poems, and the binding together by alliteration of English words with those from Romance sources would strengthen the belief that the measure was preserved where the language in which it was first known had become unintelligible, and where the masterpieces of pre-conquest poetry were unknown.

In the *Morte Arthurc* the measure is in many respects more artistically successful than in some other poems of the same class; it finds a kindred theme in war and the achievements of a national hero, and regains something of its old swing and resonance; it moves more freely here than when weighted with moral illustration as in *Tiers Tlowman,* or tipped with the fairy quills of romance as

[1] For an analysis of the later alliterative verse-systems see the articles by Luick in *Anglia,* vols. xi. and xii.

in *Sir Gaivayne and the Grem Knight;* it vibrates with the tramp of fighting legions.

The poets of the revival were not content with the well-worn vocabulary of their rhyming contemporaries, they have an unmistakable freshness of style and a boldness in culling words from the many sources at their command which conscientious compilers of glossaries often wish had been a little less enterprising. The *Morte Arthure* has these merits of freshness and variety; its vocabulary is one of the most interesting, one of the fullest of all. It is often uncompromisingly technical, for the poet delights in realities and solid facts, and it abounds in idiom and forcible, homely phrase. Its author takes pleasure in the wilder aspects of life; he has none of those descriptions of tempest, raging seas, and winter snow which have made *Sir Gawayne, Cleanness and Patience,* and the *Destruction of Troy* famous, but he too relishes the keen air of the crags, and knows the power of the "wagande wynde owte of the weste." He puts all his strength into his pictures of stirring multitudes, of revellings and monsters, of the strife on the stream and the crashing of battle-coggs.

He is minute in matters of detail, only Langland or Deguileville could have rivalled him in his sketch of the giant of Mont St. Michael, or of Cradok's pilgrim-dress, contrasted as it is with the brilliant state of the man whose undoing he is about to proclaim. The cheap simile and metaphor of the rhyming romances is cast aside, the poet enumerates his points of interest swiftly and vividly, using his "lists" with rare success.

For artistic use of alliteration we may note specially lines 1464-7, 1763-4, 490, 2097-8, 2030, 2031.

There is an observance of common things, sympathy with men in their daily occupation, and a grasp of fact, for which we should look in vain to any other poet of the time but Chaucer himself; this is amply illustrated by the lines describing the bustle of the start out to sea from Sandwich, 729-55, or the boys chasing the boar at the gates of Como, 3120-3, or the king in his barge, 3630-34, or the mariners chatting of their "termys" before the battle at sea.

The story is almost untouched by romance; it is that of the chroniclers with a few additions from other sources. Well in keep-

ing with the subject is the lordly opening where Arthur appears flushed with the pride of conquest like Veronese's Alexander amidst the profusion of his banquets. The "gabs" of the lords in the Giant's Tower have an actuality which is of the style of the chronicles, not of romance; they might have been recorded by Froissart.

The *Morte Arthure* has little of the spirit of romance, we find that only in an allusion here and there, and in the Gawayne episode. The men known to modern readers from Malory and Tennyson, there moving under a mystic heaven or caught in the toils of impossible undertakings, are here burly warriors who love conquest, banquets, and the service of their lord. The ideals of *Amadis of Gaul* would have been incomprehensible to them. They know nothing of Broceliande or the Grail, and are not troubled by the prophecies of Merlin and the knightly quest. Here is war without the wantonness, the dragon's wing without the faery charm. There are added touches of horror, like those of the *Mysteries of Udolpho*, but there is none of the mystery and the elfin gleam which have fallen upon later travellers in Arthur's realms. It is a far cry from Malory to Spenser, but the gap between the *Morte Arthurc* and Malory's book, which embodies most of its story, would be more difficult to bridge over. Arthur in Avalon has a surgeon from Salerno to search his wounds, and is buried to the mourning of pontifical dirges amidst "blacks" and conventional trappings of woe. We hear no hint of his coining again, or of that barge which seems to float for ever along the horizon of romance. Launcelot is one of the "lesse men," and, like his fellow-lords, has thoughts only of war witli Lucius. The form of narrative is positive, it leaves little to suggestion. The characters are highly individualised and carefully drawn, the poet finds his chief interest in them ; but when was the typical romancer ever led away from the one essential, incident, to a consideration of his characters ? The manner is nowhere that of romance, the development is on entirely different lines; one might liken the originality of treatment to that of Chrestien de Troyes, but Chrestien's again is a different spirit, more courtly and chivalrous in tone.

Gawayne's position is, according to the English tradition, second in importance to Arthur alone, only Cador comes near him in

weight, and Cador has been carefully studied, his character is clearly worked out. It is well to have a *Mortc Arthure* where Gawayne has his due, he soon became a shadow, and as "Gawayne the Hende " was looked upon as a convenient figure for pageants. The northern poets bring him into special prominence ; he is one of the few heroes of romance who receive sympathetic notice in the *Canterbury Tales.*

There are various points of interest in the poem; an attempt has been made to mark some of them in the notes. The author is worthy of his place as a contemporary of Chaucer, and is none the less deserving of praise because he elected to clothe his creation in a garb less courtly than that which was to pass on to future poets as the royal robe of English song. And his measure was not without subtle influence on later styles, we hear its beat in the lines of Coleridge and Scott, and note its free movement in Elizabethan verse as in the lyrics of Burns ; many wood-notes in English poetry bear witness to the native power of the old metre of the *Morte Arthure.*

ii.—THE AUTHOR.

The authorship of the *Morte Arthure* has been much discussed ; it is commonly assigned to Huchown. There are difficulties in the way of that assignation, and we await further proof. If Huchown was a Scotchman, then the *Morte Arthurc,* as we have it, was not composed by him ; the linguistic proofs to the contrary are not easily set aside, but it may have been adapted from his original, or it may have been the original, unknown to Wyntown, from which he worked. Book V. of the *Morte Darthure* is based on a version which apparently differed slightly from this, and other versions may have been written in other dialects. The discussion cannot be re-opened here. Perhaps the unexplored treasures of the Hunter MSS. will give the missing clue. A full statement of the arguments for and against the Huchown authorship is given in the article on Huchown by Trautmann, *Anglia,* I . , pp. 109-149; it enters also **upon** a metrical and linguistic analysis of alliterative poems allied to the *Morte Arthure,* and establishes an interesting connection between it and the *Pystyl of Sweie Susannc.* References quoted **are** to—

G. Chalmers, *Poetical Works of David Lindsay,* London, 1806, vol. i. preface, p. 132.

D. Laing, *Select Remains of Scottish Poetry,* Edinburgh, 1832, Preface to Susanne.

F. Madden, *Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knizt,* 1839, pp. 301-304.

R. Morris, *Alliterative Poems,* 1864, 1869, preface.

G. Pan ton and D. Donaldson, *Destruction of Troy,* 1869, 1874, preface.

Further metrical analysis will be found in the articles by Luick, in *Anglia,* XL, **XII.** Allusions to the Huchown authorship will be found in most of the later editions of alliterative poems. The *Athenaeum* for May 1900 has a letter by Mr. G. Neilson on the Huchown Codex.

ill.—THE SOURCES.

The poet has drawn from several sources. In the main he follows the version of Arthur's history as told in Books IX. and X. of the *Historia Regum Britannia* of Geoffrey of Monmouth, and appears to have corrected later renderings by this older account. The Latin form of some of the names seems to prove that, but he may have had access to another Latin version now lost. Other well-known versions of the history, some of which may have served as further sources for the alliterative ve rsion, are—

Li Roman de Brut, by "Wace.

Lajamon's *Brut.*

Robert of Gloucester's *Chronicle,*

Pierre de LangtofVs *Chronicle,*

Robert of Brunne's *Chronicle.*

Other versions are quoted in the edition of the English prose *Merlin* by Mr. H. B. Wheatley, with an introduction by Mr. W. E. **Mead,** 1899. The part of Merlin corresponding to the continuation of Robert de Borron's poem tells the story with certain variations, but departs from our version after the conquest of Rome. Malory's version in Book V. of the *Morte Darthure* corresponds to the end of the Gawayne episode. A comparison of the poem with its sources **has** been made by P. Branscheid in his article, 'Quellen des **Morte** Arthure,'in *Anglia,* VIII., *Anzeiger,* pp. 179-336, an article to

which the notes of this edition are indebted for many fruitful suggestions. Dr. 0. Sommer's edition of Malory discusses his Book V. with our poem.

Originals of the Gawayne episode and the excursion into Lorraine have not been found. The speeches in the Tower and their fulfilment may have been taken from some source now lost. Features from many giant-stories can be traced in the giant of Mont St. Michael; there the skilful art of the poet and his imagination may be safely quoted as sources ; the second dream is woven from the looms of myth and legend, it is not told by the chroniclers, but dreams were part of the common stock, and Fortune's Wheel and the Nine Worthies were freely used by writers in both prose and verse to illustrate the changes of fate.

iv.—THE TEXT.

The text is re-edited from the Thornton MS. of Lincoln Cathedral Library, which has been carefully collated with the three earlier editions, viz. that of J. 0. Halliwell, 1847, of G. G. Terry, 1861, and of E. Brock, 1865, 1871. There are few variations from the latest edition, the parenthetical readings of which have been in most cases retaiued.

The text differs from the MS. in so far as contractions and abbreviations have been expanded, and punctuation has been added. Capital letters also have been given to names of countries, persons, etc., and taken away from common nouns ; their use in the MS. is quite arbitrary. It is to be hoped that these deviations will be tolerated by scholars on account of the very substantial help they afford to the general reader.

m̄ and n̄ have in most cases been expanded to mm, nn ; but in some others have been inadvertently sent to press with the stroke, as they are in the MS.

The contracted *and* of the MS. is represented by &, the thorn and 3 have been retained.

The curl after final m, n, and the stroke through 11 have been read as meaningless. In Mr. Brock's edition they are represented by a final *e* in italic, and both metrical and linguistic considerations would often demand this representation were it not the case that

the scribe is obviously regardless of both those considerations himself, and that in most fifteenth -century MSS. the signs in question are without any signification whatever. The turn after final r and d and the stroke by the g might have gone the same way, but they do not occur so often; they are represented by the italic *e*.

Final e is a difficulty in this period ; it would be hard to prove by Thornton's MS. whether it was sounded or not, there are as many proofs one way as the other. The student may add the e at will after almost every finall 11, m, n in the poem, and very often between Il and final s as well.

The spelling -urn, -un, after a, o, has been adopted in place of •mm, -nn, of other editions, and so treated as a mere scribal sign without phonetic value ; hence "Ia und" may mean either land or "lawn" ; this spelling has been carried out in words both of Germanic and Romance origin. The initial letter and the scroll with Robert Thornton's name are from the MS. The design on the cover is put together from various contemporary MSS.

NOTES

Line 17 Geoffrey of Monmouth has no reference to the Round Table. Wace adds his account to it, and the later chroniclers follow him.

Lines 16-51 give a short summary of Arthur's conquests, told in full by the chroniclers. It is noteworthy that the victory over the Saxons is left out, a point brought out very clearly by writers of the Norman School.

35 *Henawde,* Hainault.

36 *Brctayn the lesse,* Brittany.

37 *Grece,* see 1. 602, where the "Grekes" are allies of Rome ; Greece belongs, however, to other lists of conquered countries, and may be copied here from some Alexander list.

37 *Gyan,* Guienne.

39 *Turoyn,* Touraine ; *T/tolas,* Toulouse.

40 *Pcyters,* Poictiers ; *Prouynce,* Provence.

41 *Vyenne,* Vienne in France.

42 *Erugc?* Auvergne, read *Of [Ou]ergne. Anyon,* Anjou; Lazamon has Aluerne, Angou.

44 *Nauerne,* Navarre.

45 *Almayne,* Germany; *Estriche,* Austria.

47 *Fra Swynn vnto Swetherwyke,* from Cadsand in Zeeland to Sweden: *Swynn* was the old roadstead, now choked up by sand, where Edward I I I. won a victory over Philip's fleet. Just about that time the name was changed from Swynn (Het Zwijn = the Southern) to Sluse and Sluys. It lay just between Zeeland and Flanders; in his 'Lives of the British Admirals,' Sou they tells of its sounding waters and its rivalry with Bruges, also of the change of name. Minot uses both names in his song commemorating Edward's victory. *Swctherwyke* is mentioned three times by Wyntoun as Swetheryke and Swethryk.

55 *Bretayn pe braddcrc,* Britain.

61 *Caerlyon.* Geoffrey of Monmouth gives a long account of the

glories of the ancient Caerleon on the Usk, about 3½ miles north of Newport. It was an important town in the time of the Romans, and its ruins were noted in the twelfth century. Trevisa and Higden tell of two cities of legions, one Caerlegion (Caerleon), the other Caerusk, built by Belinus, King of Britain, where the Usk falls into the Severn. The great Giant's Tower was there. The third place sometimes referred to as Caerleon was Chester, as everybody knows.

64 *Carlelcle.* Some ballads and romances mention Carlisle as a chief seat of Arthur; in the ' Awntyrs of Arthure at the Tarne Wathelyn' Arthur summons his dukes and dusperes to Carelele, and in the ' Parlement of the Three Ages' it is said, " His courte was at Carlele commonly holden." Carlisle appears to have been confused with Caerleon by poets of the north, and French poets write of Carduel an Gales. Carlisle or Cardoile and even Cumberland itself are often spoken of as in Wales. The chroniclers mention Caerlyon only. There was probably confusion between Caerleon on the Usk, Caerleon = Chester, and Carlisle.

86 *Lucius Iberius.* In * Geoffrey of Monmouth' he is Lucius Tiberius, Republics procurator, also imperator. His right to the title of emperor is not quite clear, as the Emperor Leo seems to stand behind him as over-lord. Wyntoun, the Scottish chronicler, was quite certain that Lucius was not the Emperor of Rome. Lazamon calls him Kaiscre, and many narrators of Arthur's R6man campaign give Lucius the imperial chair.

116 Cf. 1. 4050, where Arthur's eyes intimidate his own knights. Malory allows the ambassadors to tell Lucius of Arthur's wrathful countenance when they return to Rome, but leaves out this description of it here. Some of the chroniclers say that Arthur's barons were angry and Arthur calmed them.

156 *Cayous,* Kay, Arthur's famous seneschal, noted elsewhere for his clumsiness and his surliness. In ' Golagros and Gawane ' Gawayn says: "Schir, ye knaw that Schir Kay is crabbit of kynde." In Chrestien de Troyes's ' Yvain' there is a lively scene during which the queen tells Kay that he is "pleins del renin," and the poet adds—

" Keus qui mont fu ranponeus,
Fel et poignanz et afiteus."

Our poet is, however, quite unconcerned with this aspect of Kay ; in 1. 209 he is "Cayous pe curtaise," and all through he is made butler, not seneschal. In Cymric tradition Kay is the boldest and most successful of all knights j he could remain under water without breathing for nine days and nights.

212-215 The properties of stones are learnedly explained in various mediaeval lapidaries.

233 *Gaywayne.* Here and in many following lines Gawayn's initial letter should be W, cf. 11. 1480, 2223, etc. Gawayn and Guinevere are associated together in many romances, as in 'Sir Gawayn and the Grene Knyzt,' and the ' Awntyrs of Arthure,' and this, partly in keeping with Gawayn's high station at Court, partly to meet the needs of alliterative poetry.

234 *Owghtreth,* an unusual form of Ughtred; possibly here a doublet of Wychere, Whycher, Wecharde, the reading of Guitard in this poem. *Turry.* Branscheid thinks this may be one of the ladies at Arthur's Court. There was a douzepere called Terry.

245 *The geauntes tourc, "* in giganteam turrim," which, according to Geoffrey of Monmouth, was at the entrance to the palace at Caerleon. (See note to 1. 61.) Malory leaves it out. Brutus found Albion full of giants whom he conquered, but some lived on to later times in Wales and Cornwall.

247 The poet has brought Cador's character into special prominence. He had distinguished himself in the great final battle with the Saxons. La3amon calls him "Cador pe kene," and says he bestowed his kinswoman Guinevere on Arthur; ho is also Cador, " Arthures deorling," who takes the first place at Arthurs crowning. Though keen, Lazamon makes him "swipe wis and swipe war," and Wace says he was " de grant voisdie " (ruse, finesse). Geoffrey of Monmouth describes him as a man of a merry disposition, and in all the chronicles he speaks first for war. In the ' Morte Arthure' his rash courage is found to be a costly quality ; Arthur rebukes him in the Giant's Tower, and again after he had fought on the way to Paris, 1. 1922. When he gives him the praise due to his courage later on, it is only to say that he has done doughtily with his hands. Cador's fear of the scorn of Launcelot, 1. 1720, is not found in any other version. In the great battle with Lucius Arthur finds a safe place for him, and sets him to guard the reserve

forces, only calling him into action when the battle is won and he may pursue with all his zest.

277 *Belyn and Brcmyn,* Belinus and Brennius; apparently, as Branscheid points out, Bremyn is mis-written for Breme, the -yn occurring in two other names in this line was added here also. *M* for *n* is common enough in this text, cf. 1. 1265, where Gryme is forGerin. These British princes are mentioned in all the chronicles. They may be found even in Milton's ' History of England.' Book III. of Geoffrey's 'Historia' recounts their conquest of Rome. Belin appears in Welsh genealogical tables as a suitable ancestor for heroes, and may have been a sun-god. He was worshipped on mountains, some of which are named in his honour. Brennius was probably one of his cognomens, and only later came to be a separate individuality. *Bawclewyne* is not spoken of as an ancestor elsewhere. Roman ancestiy was the boast of all the great European heroes of this time.

288 *Aungcrs,* King of Scotland ; Lazamon calls him Scotland's "deorling." He plays a leading part in great battles.

301 W*ythin two chics,* within the right limits of old age and youth.

304 *The burclyche beryn* is Howel of Brittany, uncle of Helen of St. Michael's Mount, one of the three knights of princely birth at Arthur's Court, " So mild, polite and friendly that it was difficult to refuse him a request." Dr. H. Zimmer points out that there was a Hoel, Count of Brittany, in the time of William the Conqueror. He was William's cousin, and sent troops for the conquest of England.

320 This interesting person has been rescued from obliteration by Branscheid. He is Valyant, King of West Wales, see 11. 1982, 2064, a nephew of Arthur. Other forms of his name are Walyant, Galegantin, Galygantynis. In the English prose translation of the Book of Merlin he appears as Tradilyvanus. He has a particular grudge against Rome, and repeats his vow before the great battle, so Arthur gives him the chance he wanted. He slays the " Vicounte " with his own hand, cf. 11. 2064-5. The speeches in the Giant's Tower should be compared with the various parts taken by the lords in the final struggle with Lucius. The vows will be found fulfilled to the letter. This scene and its corresponding fulfilment

are not in any other account of Arthur's conquest of Rome, and Malory has not seen fit to keep it.

327 *Pounte Tremble,* Pontremoli in the Apennines.

334 *Wyghte,* Isle of Wight; *Walschelande,* Wales.

352 *Petyrsande,* Pietra Santa.

357 *Syre Ewan fytz Uriencc* is another addition to the chronicler's account. He is conspicuous in the romances ; he is a nephew of Arthur, cousin to Gawayn, and the hero of the 'Chevalier au Lyon' by Chrestien de Troyes, cf. 11. 360, 2067. In Welsh tradition he was not a contemporary of Arthur.

368 This is the first appearance of Launcelot in the story.

375 *Genyuers,* probably Malory's Ianeweyes.

382 *Sir Lottez.* Loth is Gawayn's father, lord of Orkney and King of Norway ; he kills a giant in the final battle, cf. 11. 391, 2089.

385 *Weredes,* Wyrd, one of the three fatal sisters of Teutonic mythology, was early generalized as Fate ; the word occurs only in plural form in this poem, cf. 1. 3889. The figure with the turning-wheel in Arthur's dream has eclipsed the unrelenting Wyrd of Old English poetry.

419 Arthur's answer is in the best style of "gab" ; its savagery is well in keeping with his bearing when he first receives the message, and in fine contrast to the splendour of the banquet-scene.

424 *Rcone,* or Roone (?); *e* and *o* are not always easy to distinguish in the MS. ; Rhone.

428 *Meloyne,* Milan.

450 *Watlyng-strette,* the Northern portion evidently, running through North Yorkshire, and by Catterick, see 1. 482.

471 *Sex sum,* see 1. 81, where the number is *sexten,* for which *sex mm* is possibly mis-written.

482 *Catrike,* Catterick, the old Cataractonium, a station on the Roman road, in N.W. Yorkshire. As this station lies considerably north of Chester and quite out of the way of Caerleon on the Usk, it is evident that the poet meant Carlisle by *Carlclcle.*

496 *Akyn,* Aix-la-Chapelle.

501 *Suters,* Sutri.

521 Ten in all, see 1. 545.

538-541 Largesse was a virtue highly extolled in the Middle

Ages, and corresponds to the Greek "magnificence." In 'Piers Plowman' Largenesse serves Truth, and is one of the seven virtuous sisters.

559 *Geen,* Genoa. Geen or Iene is connected by alliteration with giants, gesserants and genatours.

570-589 The poet here allows himself an expansion into one of those long lists of names so delightful to mediaeval ears, pleasing even to Chaucer.

573 *Ermonye,* Armenia.

578 *Damyat,* Damietta.

580 *Capados,* Cappadocia ; *Baldakc,* Bagdad.

587 *Bayous,* probably mis-written for barons.

588 *Preter lohne landes:* this realm of Prester John was believed to lie in Central Asia. From the time of the twelfth century rumour gave many accounts of Prester John—it said he had conquered the Mussulmans and was prepared to meet the Crusaders and finally to help in the overthrow of Anti-Christ. Pope Alexander III. sent to look for him, but his messenger never returned. A letter believed to have been written by Prester John circulated in Europe towards the close of the twelfth century ; it told of the horned men, the phcenix and other famous wonders to be found *in* his kingdom. All serious travellers looked for him, but he was never found, though people still clung to the hope that he would be discovered some day.

594 *Grekkes See,* the eastern part of the Mediterranean.

600 *Cornett,* Corneto.

604 *Pull and Pruyslande,* Apulia and Prussia.

605 *Lettoie,* Lithuania.

608 *Surry,* Syria.

613 A "paynim" foe could not fail to have an accompaniment of sorcerers in league with evil powers. Picts, paynims and ethyns fight also for Modred, 11. 4123-5. Legend said that giants were to be hired for fighting in plenty ; they fought against all great heroes and restorers of order.

621 *Westwale,* Westphalia.

623 *Coloine.* The MS. has no dot over the *i,* so the right reading may be Colome. Malory has Coleyne, Cologne.

628 *Constantyne,* the peninsula of Cotentin in Normandy.

629 *Bareflete,* Barfieur.

635 *Sandwyche,* so also Malory, but the chroniclers say Southampton or Hamo. Sandwich suits the metre and pleased the poet's ear; he had just scored a success with the name in 1. 490.

645 *Mordrede and- Modred.* Geoffrey of Monmouth, Modredus; Lajamon, Modred.

667 For this use of *mysesc,* cf. 'Piers Plowman,' vii. 26, "Amende mesondieux fere-myde and myseyse folke helpe."

681 Modred is a sentimental person, and has a rhetorical manner giving no index to his character. Just before perpetrating treacherous deeds, 1. 4181, he sheds penitential tears, 1. 3886. It is his "weredes" which caused all the mischief, and he writes feelingly to Waynor "how the werlde chaungede." The tragedy of Arthur's end hangs on Cradok's words, 1. 3555, "Thus has sir Modrede merrede us all."

699-704 Guinevere's character as here drawn may be studied with that of Chaucer's Cresseid; 1. 720 gives the only hint of coming trouble.

730 The activity of the mariners is sketched in Wace's manner, but is more highly specialized.

760 We hear of many Arthur-visions; an interesting discussion on the merit of dreams will be found in Chaucer's story of Chauntecleer and Pertelote in the 'Canterbury Tales.'

This vivid description of the two monsters is rendered again by Malory with evident delight, but he substitutes a boar for the bear. Geoffrey, Wace and Lajamon say that Arthur was not content with the explanation of the dream, and Robert of Gloucester adds a second dragon representing Lucius to complete the meaning. This passage, unusually heightened with glowing detail, is a fine sample of the poet's art. La3amon describes the creatures in the general terms characteristic of Old English poetry, and like it dwells rather on the feelings of horror in the mind of the spectator than on any special features in the beings themselves; in his 'Brut' the dragon has the flaming eyes of Grendel.

769 For the suggestion that a line may be missing here, see Branscheid's notes on the poem.

772 *flayre,* Malory has "flame."

821 *tachesesede,* Malory, "his tail full of tatters."

841 Geoffrey says nothing about a Templar. Lajamon lets a

"hende cniht" bring the message ; Malory has a husbandman, for in his time the Templars were almost forgotten.

843 Everywhere else the giant is from Spain; that giants were begotten by fiends and the descendants of Cain was the common tradition of Old English poets.

845 The giant's liking for children's flesh is a peculiarity of the alliterative 'Morte Artliure,[1] cf. 1. 1051. It would seem to have aiisen from a confusion of barn, child, and bar, boar. Robert of Brunne says the giant sat " rostyng a swyn gret and fat" when Arthur discovered him. Robert of Gloucester paints him with a " vatte barn (beren, beere) " on his spit. In the ' Book of Merlin' he simply roasts flesh.

892-3 Kay and Bedvere are associated together in many romances.

899 Mont St. Michael in Normandy is well known, and near it is the rocky island Tombelène ; both are believed to have been sacred, first to Druidical, then to Roman deities. They were garrisoned by English troops in 1273, and again during the French wars of the fifteenth century. The story of Helen and the giant is one of the local legends, and is told in a French poem of the twelfth century on the Abbey of St. Michael. It is probable that the name Tombelène existed long before the tale of Helen, and had an earlier form, Tumbellena. Lovers of sun-god theories find in it a reminiscence of Beli,—see note on Belinus above, 1.277,—a reminiscence which early Christian teachers tried to destroy by inventing a stoiy to explain the name. There is a legend of another Helen who stood on the sea-shore by Mont St. Michael to watch her lover Montgomery sail for England with William the Conqueror. She died of grief, and her tomb is Tombelene. Mont St. Michael was a favourite resort of pilgrims, so the local legends were doubtless carried away and retold in many lands. Le Roux de Lincy, the editor of Wace's ' Brut,' holds the appearance of the legend in Arthur's history as a proof of the French origin of Geoffrey's sources. Wace calls the giant Dinabue.

909 Helmets were often decked with precious stones by the romancers.

919 In all the chronicle accounts it is Bedvere who goes first to reconnoitre ; he crosses an arm of the sea in a boat, learns all about the giant and the two fires from the "wafull wyfe," and returns with a full report to Arthur. Though the three adventurers ride

by a river when they set out, they do not cross over any water to reach the giant in this version.

945 The fires and smoke are features of the story told of Kay and Bedvore in the Welsh ' Twrch Trwyth,' see San Marte, ' Beitrage zur bretonischen und celtisch-germanisehen Heldensage,' pp. 33, 65. The two knights go in search of a giant, whom they kill after tearing out his beard. From Plinlimmon they see in the south a great column of smoke rising from the giant's fire, cf. 1. 1039.

952 *New,* the MS. reading, may be either new or now.

964 This conjunction of Wade and Wawayn may lead to some sober reflection on the influence of alliteration on legend. Wittich, a kinsman of Wade, is associated with Samson and Goliath as a type of strength in the old German poems edited by C. Bartsch ('Meister Lieder der Kolmarer Handschrift'). Chaucer twice mentions Wade, and Lydgate refers to romances of Havelok, Horn and Wade. The romance was apparently a late development of Wade as an adventurer in a boat, Guingelot, "wherein," says Kinaston's note, "'he did many strange things and had many wonderfull adventures." Malory, in ' Morte Darthure,' Book VII., chap, ix., says "as wyzte as euer was Wade," and a metrical romance, 'Sir Bevis,' from the Auchinleck MS., classes Bevis, Guy of Warwick, Launcelot and Wade together as dragon-slayers. Camden mentions Wade's Gap in the Roman Wall, and a castle not far from Whitby belonging to Wada, a Saxon general who fought in a battle at Whalley in Lancashire, and died in 798. The date and the localities in Northern England are interesting to students of ' Beowulf.' Roger of Hoveden, Leland and others tell of places named after Wade. In Konrad's ' Rolandslied' (ed. C. Bartsch, 1. 7801) the Emperor Charles tells King Oigir of Denmark that he is of Wade's kin and has a lion-heart, " thu bist thes Waten kunnes, . . . thu hast rehte eines lewen muot."

Little is known of the oldest form of the Wade myth. The earliest of the Old English poems preserved to us, ' Widsifc,' mentions Wada as ruler of the Haelsingas, and this is the first reference to him we have in any literature. He was probably a sea-god or a sea-hero of the North Sea, but W. Mannhardt thinks he was a god of the Danube. He had flaming eyes and a wide beard, was easily roused to wrath, and as strong as twenty-six men ; when he blew his horn the earth shook, the sea raged and walls fell. North

Germanie saga gives the boat to Wieland. In the * Thidrekssaga' Wade is Wieland's father, and sends the boy to learn his craft in Mimir's smithy, where he had Seigfrid for a companion ; afterwards Wieland is carried over the Groenasund on Wade's back to two mountain dwarfs to continue his studies. Wade is also woven into the Gudrun saga. Sir Walter Scott lamented the loss of his story a hundred years ago, and we know little more about it to-day. The reference of this poem is to Wade as slayer of monsters. Wawayn is a champion of distressed damsels in French romance, always ready to protect against oppressors.

1002 The mantle with a fringe of kings' beards belonged to the giant Ritho, to whom Arthur refers in 1.1175, the same as Malory's King Ryon of North Wales and Ireland. In the prose continuation of Robert de Borron's ' Merlin,' by Mons. Paulin Paris called the ' Book of Arthur,' Arthur slays the giant of Mont St. Michael with the sword Marmyadoise, which he had taken from King Rion of the bearded mantle, so that a slight connection between the two giants already existed before the alliterative poem was written. In Drayton's ' Polyolbion ' the connection is closer still, and it is Ritho himself who slays Helen and wears a coat made of the beards of kings. The ' Parleraent of the Three Ages' has an entirely different version, there Arthur slays a dragon on " Sayn Michaell's Mounte," and it is Rusten who wants the king's beard to trim his bride's mantle. The ' Buik of Alexander' distinguishes the "Mount Michaell" giant from "Rostrik" of the " Kingis beirdis." Mons. Paulin Paris suspects the influence of Vergil on the giant story, and quotes Hercules and Cacus.

1018 *Bretayne pe more,* Britain.

1051 Malory heightens the horror; " three spits whereon were broached twelve young children late born, like young birds."

1175 *Araby,* a mountain in Wales. Geoffrey, in ' Aravis Monte'; it is not the same as Arraby in 1. 576, but the Aran Mountains, Spenser's " Rauran" (= yr Aran). See Faery Queene, I. ix. 4, where Arthur was consigned to the care of Timon, whose dwelling was

". . . low in a valley greene,
Under the foot of Rauran mossy hore,
From whence the river Dee as silver cleene
His tombling bill owes roll with gentle rore."

Here, in Merionethshire, he was visited by Merlin.

1225 *Castell Blanke.* Geoffrey, ad Albam fluvium venit. Alba= Blanke.

1251 *Duchanen,* Germans.

1263-5 The list of messengers varies greatly. In the 'Book of Arthur,' Gawayn, Iwayn and Saigremor go. Nothing is said here of the special reason for choosing Gawayn. He had been educated at Rome in the service of Pope Supplicius, and received knighthood from Arthur after the conquest of Norway. Lajamon says—

"Walwain cuoe Romanise,
Walwain cuoe Bruttise.
He was iued inne Rome
Wei feole wintre."

Piene de Langtoft also says Gawayn "fu latymer."

1265 *Gryme,* Gerin of Chartres, cf. 1. 277, and note.

1279 Geoffrey of Monmouth tells the story differently, for on the way the knights urge Gawain to pick a quarrel with the Romans and so bring on fighting. In Lazamon's 'Brut' the knights declare shafts must be broken and byrnies torn before any reconcilement could be effected. In this poem the quarrel is owing entirely to the quick impulse of Gawain, the knights do not prompt him.

1311 *Cayme,* Cain.

1336 *Sayne,* the river Seine.

1340 *Paresche,* Paris.

1346 Gayous becomes *cme* here to suit the alliteration, as Branscheid has pointed out. In the 'Historia' of Geoffrey he is the emperor's nephew.

1364 A foot-note should explain that the reading of the MS. is *salle.*

1368 Only Lazamon agrees with this poem in making Gawayn strike the first stroke, elsewhere it is Gerin or Bors.

1382 *Sir Feltemour.* Geoffrey's Marcellus Mutius; Wace and La$amon have Marcel; Malory has Feldenak.

1387 Gawayn's sword is called Galentin in the 'Book of Arthur.' In the 'Roman de Launcelot' and the 'Roman de Merlin' Gawayn bears Arthur's famous sword Excalibor, the Calaborne of this text. Gawayn **had** been girded with the king's weapon when he was

dubbed knight, and kept possession of it for a time. In the English prose rendering of the ' Book of Arthur' Gawayn slays Lucius with Caliburne, but throughout this poem Arthur remains in possession of his own sword. See Sir Frederic Madden's note on Gawayn's sword in his notes to ' Golagros and Gawane,' where he quotes the actual measurement by inches from a Latin MS. of the time of Edward I.

1408 *Bedwyne.* No other accounts mention any reinforcement but that under Idrus, Ider, in 1. 1439. Branscheid thinks Bedwyne may be Bawdwyne of 11. 1606 and 2384, but it is more probably a name mis-written for some epithet unknown to the scribe, who made bayous out of barons in 1. 587. There is a " Bedwyn the bald " in the alliterative ' Alexander.'

1419 *Pctyr,* Petrieus of the ' Historia' of Geoffrey ; in one of the Wace MSS. his name is written Peredur.

1439 *Idrus,* Geoffrey's Hiderus. Wace, " Ydcr le fil Nut." His name occurs in a list of Welsh saints and in many romances. In this text he is fytz Ewayn, 1. 1498, and appears with his father in the battle with Modred. In the * Book of Arthur' "Ydier the sone of Vunde," or Vut, and Sir Eweiu, fight side by side, and from this grouping of the knights' names together in the fight the mistake of making them father and son would appear to have arisen. In most other versions lie is slain in a later battle by Evander. Geoffrey of Monmoutli calls him, when slain by Evander, the son of Alidue of Tintagol. He was universally famous for a fight with some formidable giants near Malvern, and for another with a bear. Before Launcelot became a prominent figure it was Ider who loved Guinevere ; Tristan tells Iseult about him in an old poem.

1520 *Perce,* Persia ; *Iaffe,* Joppa.

1532 The knight and his reward are evidently invented by the poet.

1558 Malory says, "no man of worship was loste of them sauf that syr Gawayn was sore hurte." *Fytz Henry* must be a mistake for fytz Urien, for he is an important person and dear to Arthur, see 1. 1572.

1602 This "dance of Earls" replaces Geoffrey's modest list of four, Oador, Bedver and the two consuls, Borellus and Richerius.

In Malory Launcelot is in charge. The part of Cador is brought into peculiar prominence by this poet. In 1. 1640 he scouts carefully ; he knows of the danger, 11. 1708-17, but fear of Launcelot's scorn urges him on. Branscheid notes the number of French names here.

1604 Clegis was very celebrated, and the hero of a romance by Christien de Troyes. In 1.1694 he claims noble ancestry ; according to Chrestien he was the son of Alexander of Constantinople and of Soredamors, Gawayn's sister.

1606 *Bawdwyne.* In the 'Book of Arthur' he is the son of Grascien and god-son of King Ban. Mons. Paulin Paris believes him to be Baudemagus, nephew of Urien. The best-known Baudouin was Roland's brother. In Malory's 'Morte Darthur' Baudewynof Bretayn was Arthur's constable, also a " noble surgeon and a good leche," who became a hermit; a bishop Bawdewyn figures in some Gawayn romances.

1622 The poet does not treat Ewandyre as king of Syria, see 11. 1622, 1626, 1868, 1870, 1904, 1911. La^amon says Evander had come from Babylon, and he slew Borel; in this text Berell is slain by the "King of Lebe." "Wace mentions one Ewander of Frise and another, or perhaps the same, " rois de Sire."

Utolfe is Geoffrey's Vulteius Catellus.

1625 *Sextynour,* Sertorius of Libya. He is confused with the King of Syria here.

1629 *Troys,* Troyes.

1637 Lazamon draws a delightful picture of the unsuspecting convoy which rides singing through the fair wooded valley. Wace and the 'Book of Arthur' describe the prisoners with their feet bound under their horses' bellies and their hands fastened behind them.

1672 *A cowntere,* because of his distress at Arthur's revel of rents in 1, 1667. It is the precision of these allusions to general affairs and business which specially characterizes this poet.

1681 *Three* is apparently mis-written by the scribe for some other word.

1691 Cf. 1. 1694. A similar confusion between lond and lord possibly explains an error in 1. 2286. Cf. 1. 878.

1695 *Brut,* Brutus, the supposed ancestor of the Britons ; Milton

tells the legend of his slaughter of the giants of Albion in his 'History,' and refers to him in 'Comus.'

1698 *Borghte,* mis-written for Brute, the spelling influenced by the following word. *Fro* = from the time that, a common construction.

1720 This allusion to Launcelot is not found elsewhere.

1744 *Wawayne* is probably mis-written for Bawdwyne, *Vryell,* for Beryll, see 11. 1605, 1606. It is unlikely that a knight so important as Gawayn would suddenly appear in Cador's *cortege* without previous mention. Branscheid pointed out the identity of Beryll, who is one of those slain in the fight. B is the letter required for rhyming with Bedwere.

1786 Cador's language is always vigorous and racy, with local allusions and terse idioms. He quotes the only proverb in the poem, at 1. 1844. Cf. 11. 1788, 1837-1843. *Corne bote* was evidently an unsatisfactory kind of bote, and this is intelligible if "bote" was paid in kind when corn values were constantly shifting.

1797. Works his course through.

1824 *Achinour,* Askanere, cf. 1. 1739.

1825 *Origge and Ermyngall;* these two names take the place of two others probably beginning with H, perhaps Heryll and Herygall of 1. 1742. Malory has Heringdale for Herygall.

1828 In other versions the convoy is saved only by the timely help of Guitard of Poitou; here all turns on the valour of Cador and his knights. ·In the 'Book of Arthur' Cleodalis brings support.

1843 "Hethynge es hameholde," there should be no hyphen; scorn is home-bred, a man has himself to thank for his shame.

1804 *Cayous;* Kay has not been mentioned before in this episode, and it is just possible that his name has been mis-written for Cador here, as Cador is a mistake for his name in 1. 2385. He is called "the keen" elsewhere.

1866 *Cordewa.* Branscheid explains this as a mistake for Cornette, cf. 1. 1909.

1871 This is the only mention of *Segramore.*

1904 *Utere* for Utolf, see 1. 1868.

1908 *Baroims.* The line wants a name beginning with C, and

Branscheid thinks Geoffrey's Quintus Carucius, mentioned amongst the slain, would give Carous.

1909 Corneto, near Civitȁ Veeehia.

1912 *a* = are.

1928 In Malory Launcelot's reply is, "Nay! for once shamed may never be recovered."

1964 *Sewn.* The geography differs from that of Wace and those who follow him. Our poet seems to have read Geoffrey's version with some chart or other MS. accounts. He rejects Lengrias, and writes Awguste, 1. 1967, where Wace has Autun, Ostom. There might even in the fourteenth century have been MSS. from Caen or the Abbé St. Michael to which the poet had access, and by these he may have found place-names to suit near the river Orne in Northern France. Here it seems the poet thought the battle took place; his *Sexon, Sessoyne,* might thus be Seez, Seois. He has read Suesia of the 'Historia' his own way. Geoffrey's Augustodonum is his *Aivguste;* Augustodumm was an old classical name for Bayeux. After the battle, 1. 2373, we are back at Cotentin again, and near Caen too. He is usually precise in matters of detail, but geography was a thorny subject in his day, and it is quite possible he had not formed any very clear idea as to the situation of Saxony or Germany, and wrote *Scssoyiie* vaguely.

1967 *Aioguste.* See note to 1. 1964.

1971 *Leo;* Geoffrey's Leo imperator, Frollo's over-lord in Book IX. chap. ii. of the 'Historia.'

1972 Lajamon here dwells on Merlin's prophecy of the fall of Rome.

1977 *Sessoyne* is the common Romance name for Saxony, written also *Sewn,* cf. 1. 1964.

1982 *Valyant* is the Welsh king of 11. 320 and 3044. His name should be Walyant (Galegantin), see note to 1. 320; and *Vyleris* should be Walis. Arthur trusts his purpose of revenge and gives him a leading part.

1991 The prominence of the archers in this poem is characteristic of the time.

1996 *Boion,* Rouen.

2025 *Viterbe,* Viterbo.

2089 The earthly Paradise was believed to lie in the far East, " beyond the stream of ocean," raised high above Noah's flood on terraced hills. Enoch and Eli were still there awaiting the coming of Anti-Christ, and they testified to the temperate climate. Higden and Trevisa describe it as compassed about with walls of fire and guarded by angels. Cf. 'Parlement of the Three Ages/ 11. 332-6, and Mr. Gollancz's note to 'Ercules boundes.'

2074 The lords fulfil their vows to the letter, and in the order in which they were spoken in the Giant's Tower. Launcelot there vows to joust with Lucius before the journee begins, and he slays Lucius here. Branscheid refers to this as a proof that the poet was drawing from various sources, for Lucius is killed by Arthur himself, 1. 2255. All through the battle, however, Lucius the emperor bears his highest title, and is either *emperor* or *conqueror;* he is distinguished from lords in 11. 2220-1, and this Lucius is more probably Lucius Catellus, a great general mentioned by Geoffrey. The poet follows Geoffrey closely at times, and might easily refer to his pages for a name to help him out of a difficulty, and when he weaves two stories, or two versions, into one, he sets to work like a good craftsman and leaves no broken threads in view.

2095-2110 The description of this fight with arrows is one of the bright parts of La^amon's ' Brut,' it excels this of the 'Morte Arthure' in stir and brilliancy. The ' Brut' says the heavens dinned, the earth shook, the arrows flew as thick as falling snow.

2123 *Collbrande* is probably the same as Caliburne.

2126 Giants are the occasion of many of Arthur's grim jokes, cf. 1. 898.

2157 In other versions Kay rushes into the fray to avenge Bedvere's fall. His speech to the king, 1. 2186, is an addition of the poet, who is not concerned with his connection with Bedvere.

2189 *Wcrlde* is apparently an error, Brock suggests *weltlie* instead.

2197 Cf. 1. 4155.

2225 Branscheid notes here an allusion to Gawayn's taunts to the emperor when he bore Arthur's message.

2232 *Florent* is Lueius's sword.

2255 In the ' Historia' Lucius dies by an unknown hand. Waco

says, " Ne sai dire qui Tabati," so Lajamon also. Other chroniclers allude to a legend that Gawayn slew him, but add that all is uncertain. In the 'Book of Arthur' Gawayn kills Lucius with Caliburne.

2286 Branscheid suggests, *they drewe owt dromondaries of dyiterse londcs,* cf. L 878, and note to 1. 1691.

2373 *Costantyne.* See 1. 1964, note.

2380 *Kayon* Kayous ; *Came,* Caen.

2384 *Berade.* Branscheid suggests Berill, who had been killed in the earlier fray, in which also Bawdwyne was engaged, but this line and the next appear to have been wrongly copied by the scribe, they are in part an echo of 11. 2379-80. In 1. 2385 *Cador* must be a mistake for Cayous, for Cador is still alive at 1. 4188. "He beryes at Bayone," may have been re-written as "Sir Berade and Bawdwyne." *Bedwar* has been already buried. Cf. note to 1. 1864.

2388 *Lusscheburghc,* Luxemburg.

2396 From here to the landing in Britain the poet departs entirely from the chronicles. In the 'Book of Arthur' the king consults Merlin at this point, and then fights the great cat of Lausanne.

2417 *Meyes,* Metz.

2421 *Ferxwnte* see 1. 2490. In 11. 2760, 2765, 3404, Ferawnt is un enemy.

2482 *Soone.* Branscheid suggests that *soone* is sun, and for f*lethe* would read seethe, interpreting, "On Sunday the sun gave great heat/' hence the enfeebling of the Frenchmen, 1. 2484. But the word in the MS. is quite clearly "flethe," though S is the initial letter wanted to suit the alliteration. Parley is apparently the meaning wanted.

2577 Barbers practised blood-letting.

2586 *Salame,* Salerno, where was a famous school of medicine ; cf. 1. 4311, and Professor Skeat's notes to William of Palerne, 1. 964.

2605 *Priamus* is descended from all the heroes of the East. *Judas* is Judas Maccabeus, one of the Nine Worthies.

2624 Malory, "to poynt his paltocks."

2653 *Dolfincde,* Dauphine\

2657 *Sessoyny* Saxony.

2680 *Walchcre,* Walthere, see 1. 2495.

2694 *Flores,* cf. "the watery floor" of ' Lycidas.'

2705 *Fouur well.* The four great rivers of the East are quoted by Higden and Trevisa as tangible proofs of the existence of the earthly Paradise, for if the rivers did not flow from it, whence could they come?

2761 *Famacoste,* Famagosta in Cyprus.

2788 *Preiosslande,* cf. Chaucer's Prologue to the ' Canterbury Tales,' where the knight had taken his place "aboven alle nacions *in* Pruce," above the companies of Teutonic knights, the same allusion as here.

2870 Arthur bore the image of Mary on his shield Pridwen, described by Geoffrey and other chroniclers on the occasion of the king's aiming at Bath before his last battle against the Saxons. There he dons his golden helmet bearing the dragon, and his steel birnie which Lajamon says was made by Wygar, and takes Caliburne, made in the isle of Avallon, and his lance Ron, with Pridwen.

> " per wes innen igrauen,
> Mid rede golde stauen,
> An on-licnes deore
> Of drihtenes moder."—Lajamon's ' Brut,' 1. 21152.

In ' Sir Gawayn and the Grene Knyzt' Gawayne's shield bears this image.

2896 *Gerard,* the same as Ierante, cf. 1. 2890. Malory has "Gherard, a Knyght of Walys," slain in this battle.

2940 A verb appears to be wanting after duke, but Branscheid suggests *schelcle and* = scheltrone.

2943 *Gernaide,* Granada.

2950 *Mees,* Metz.

2954 *Cheldrike,* commonly known as a leader of the hostile Saxons.

2970 *Sir Dolphyn,* probably the lord of Dauphine\

3030 Malory here tells of Priamus's introduction by Gawayn to Arthur, who "lete hym anon be crystned and dyd doo calle hym his fyrste name Pryamus, and made hym a duke and knyghte of the table round."

3054 Malory, "the king availed his visor with a meek and noble countenance;" his copy was evidently slightly different from this. Cf. 1. 2624, note.

3061 This line is corrupt. Branscheid reads, *He sail be demyd full wele,* corresponding to Malory's " but the duke shall abide my judgment." We have had already several instances in this poem of confusion between *m* and *n,* and as the MS. signs for *y* and *th* are alike the mistake could very easily occur.

3068 Malory puts this episode to 1. 3083, a little later, after the taking of Como.

3110 *Combe,* Como.

3140 *Pownte Tremble;* Malory calls it the "Port of Tremble." *Pawnee,* Ponte near Turin, or for Pallaunce = Pallanza; *Pleasannce* a Romance name of Piacenza. The line should probably have been *For Pleasannce, for Pawnee* [Pallawnce], *and for Pownte Tremble.*

3141 *Pyse,* Pisa ; *Pavy,* Pa via.

3144 *Melan,* Milan.

3150 *Tuskane,* Tuscany.

3161 *Spolett,* Spoleto.

3167 *Vicmnte lorules;* Malory, "Vale of Vicecount"; this i Valyant's foe, 1. 325. See Arthur's forecast, 11. 350-356.

3220-3223 The ominous dream follows immediately on the speech, and foreshadows an anti-climax to 1. 3211. In the 'Historia' of Geoffrey there is no dream, nor does Wace tell of one. Lajamon's dream is very remarkable, and is in the character of the dreams of the Icelandic saga. Arthur there dreams that he sits astride a great hall whence he overlooks his vast possessions. Gawayn is by him, sword in hand. Modred advances with a great company, bearing a battle-axe, and begins to hew down the posts of the hall, and with him comes Guinevere, who stretches out her arm and draws down the roof on which Arthur and Gawayn are sitting. Arthur falls and breaks his arm, but the hall falls on Gawayn and breaks both his arms. Then the king smites off Modred's head with his left hand and it rolls across the field ; he also hews Guinevere in pieces and puts her body in a black pit. The people flee ; Arthur stands alone on a weald and wanders over the moors amongst birds of prey. He is carried to the sea by a golden lion and brought on shore, wet and weary, by a friendly fish.

'Le Morte Arthur' of the Harleian MS. has reminiscences of both dreams. Before fighting with Modred the king dreams that he sat, clad in gold and crowned, on a wheel under which he sees a black water full of dragons; the wheel turned round and he is torn by the dragons. He wakes and sleeps again, and Gawayn comes to him in spirit with a company of angels and warns him to give up the battle.

3251 The figure of Fortune bears every symbol of wealth and treasure, and corresponds in so far with the classical sculptures of the goddess with her horn of plenty and crowned with ears of corn. She is not here the "good housewife " of ' As You Like It.' Her dress may be compared to that of Meed in Langland's 'Piers Plowman.[1]

3260 The Greek Tyche had a wheel, also Fors, Nemesis and Fortuna. Sometimes the goddess sat on the wheel and turned with it, sometimes she bore it in her hand, as here, or it lay at her feet; there are many allusions to the wheel in the Alexander Poems and others telling sad stories of the death of kings. She differs from the Germanic AVyrd and the sleepless Frou Saelde. The globe of 1. 3354 is the symbol of universal rule ; in Roman descriptions Fortuna bears the globe or the rudder. In the French play, *Adam/ she is blind and has her wheel. In one of the Renard versions she lifts the fox on to her wheel, and promises him that it will not turn. The turning wheel of fate was known in England from the time of Alfred's translation of 'Boethius.' Chaucer's translation would be known to courtly readers about this time. Fortune says, " The covetise of men, that mai nat be stawnched,—schal it bynde me to ben stidfaste, syn that stidfastnesse is uncouth to my maneris? Swiche is my strengthe, and this pley I pleye continuely. I tome the whirlynge wheel with the turnynge sercle ; I am glad to chaungen the loweste to the heyeste, and the heyeste to the loweste. . . . What other thynge bywaylen the cryinges of tragedyes but oonly the dedes of fortune, that with unwar strook overturneth the realmes of greet nobleye ?" In the 'King's Quair' there is a real king's vision of Fortune and "hir tolter quhele"; it stands over an "ugly pit, depe as ony helle." Thd king wonders that men should seek to climb it, but finds when his turn comes that he may not refuse ; he wakes before the wheel

turns. In Rossetti's ballad, 'The King's Tragedy,' James's fate is sealed; we are told how

". . . the white face lay
In the Pit of Fortune's Wheel."

3266 Compare the description of Alexander's chair in the great alliterative 'Alexander.'

3268 The philosopher gives the names of the Nine Worthies at 11. 3408-3439. See Mr. Gollanez's preface and Appendix II. to the 'Parlement of the Three Ages' for a full discussion of them, and cf. Anglia, xxi., 'The Ballet of the Nine Nobles,' W. A. Craigie.

3345 *Frolle.* Arthur's fight with him near Paris is recorded in all the chronicle accounts.

3419 *Golyas,* Goliath.

3422 *The two . . . Jcyngcs.* Branscheid reads, *the tone . . . kynge.*

3426 Legend assigned a number of Eastern relics to Charlemagne. The mention of Longinus's spear is noteworthy here.

3470 Cradok's mantle was to be seen in the castle of Dover with Gawayne's skull, says Caxton in his preface to the 'Morte Darthure.' Cradok appears in many romances.

3545 *Hors,* Horsa.

3610 *Danamarkes,* Danes.

3672 *Braynes* should be beryns, as Branscheid points out.

3678 A word appears to be missing before *frekke,* possibly *fele.*

8700 *Spanyolis,* Spaniards.

3773 *Mownttagus.* The Montagus or Montacutes were well known in the North as leaders of expeditions against the Scots under the Edwards. They are ranged here on Gawayn's side, and are, so far as one may judge from an indication of this kind, not regarded as hostile.

3869 Sir Frederic Madden notes this passage as illustrating stanza xl. of the 'Awntyrs of Arthure'—

"Gawayne was graythely graythede one grene,
With griffons of golde engrelede full gaye."

In 'Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knyght' he bears the pentangle, elsewhere a double-headed eagle, or a lion.

3902 *Tambire,* Tamar.

3937 Branscheid reads Gutlande for guchede or guthede, cf. 1. 3763.

3942 *enswrchede* is probably a mistake for enserclede, but cf. ' Destruction of Troy/ 11. 1537-8—

> "The cité was sothely, to serche it about,
> Pre iorneys full iointly to ioyne horn by dayes."

4023 William of Malmesbury says Gawayn's grave was found in King William's time by the Welsh coast, and was fourteen feet long.

4056 *Treyntis,* perhaps for Tambire, cf. 1. 3902, or it may be the name of a town. Geoffrey writes of the last battle at Cambula, Wace at Camblan ; Lajamon has Camelford.

4075 *Errake,* the same as Geraint, Geraint ab Erbin of the 'Mabinogion.' The French name, Erec, was well known from Chresticn's romance, 'Erec et Enide,' where the story is told of the famous ride when Enide rides first. As Errik he comes in ' Sir Gawayne and the Grene Knizt,' and as Arrake fitz Lake in the ' Awntyrs of Arthure.'

4123 *Argayle,* Argyle ; *cthyns* belong to Orkney also, see 1. 4163.

4203 *Walyngfordhe,* where was a " bel otel," and a store of arms for tournaments.

4266 *Lowes* is probably the same as Lowell, cf. 1. 1516.

4308 *Glaschenbery,* Glastonbury.

4309 *Avalon,* the enchanted isle, the home of Morgan le Fay. Lazamon says here there came a little boat floating on the waves, and in it two wonderful women, who bore Arthur to the boat and departed. Geoffrey mentions Avalon, where Arthur was borne to be healed of his wounds, but does not say the king died there, and Wace writes—

> "Enoor i est, Breton l'atandent,
> Si com il dient et entandent."

So the poet has rejected earlier tradition in recording his death. In the metrical ' Vita Merlini,' Arthur is received by Morgan and her eight sisters, and borne far away to distant Avalon. Higden says Arthur was buried in the Vale of Avalon by Glastonbury

The accounts vary, and all is mystery save in this poem. "Som mad men wil mene >at Arthur schal come ajen, but pat is a ful magel tale," says Trevisa. Bishop Stillingfleet records that Arthur's coffin was found by Henry II. between two pyramids at Glassenbury in Somersetshire. Avalon and Glastonbury are confused together by writers in England. William of Malmesbury says Avallonia was another name for Glastonbury, and tells the story of Glasteing's sow and the apple-tree. The story here is according to Welsh tradition. French writers distinguished between Avalon and Glastonbury. See ' Zeitschrift fur franzosische Sprache und Literature and Dr. H. Zimmer's article in vol. xii.

4322 *Waxe ne wrythe*, a reminiscence of an old alliterative phrase of Old English Poetry, weaxan ond wripian.

GLOSSARY

A, *int.* ah ! 320, 1791, 3967

A, and, 2522, 2797 ; are, 1912

ABAISCHITE, *p.p.* abashed, 255

ABAISTE, ABAYSTE, *p.p.* cast down, 1423, 3737

ABOUEN, ABOUENN, ABOUN, ABOWNNE, ABWEX, *prep,* and *adv.* above, 903, 564, 511, 3329, 775

ACCOUNTES, V 3 *s.* reckons, 1102 ; ACOUNT, *inf.* tell, 3929 ; ACOUNTE, 1 *s.* care for, 405

ACTON, *S.* a stuffed and quilted jacket or jerkin worn under the mail, 902; *pi.* AKETOUNS, 2626

AFFRAYE, *S.* fright, 3226

AFFRAYEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *pi.* frightened, 2804 ; *p.p.* afraid, 2256

AGASTE, *p.p.* frightened, terrified, 2442, 2728

AGAYNE-STANBE, *V.* resist, 3757 ; AZAYNE-STONDES, 3 *pl.*

AJUGGEDE, *p.p.* deemed, esteemed, 862, 3411

ARE, *s.* oak, 1096

AKETOUNS. *See* ACTON

ALBE, AWLDE, *adj.* old, 13, 979

ALET, *s.* AILETTE, a steel shoulder-plate, 2565

ALFYN, *8.* a term of contempt, from the name given to the bishop in chess, formerly elephant = Alfyn, 1343

ALGARDE, *S.* a Spanish wine highly prized in the Middle Ages, 202

ALKYN, ALKYNS, *adj.* all kinds of, 928, 3244

ALLBLAUSTERS, *S. pi.* arbalesters, soldiers armed with an arbalest or crossbow, 2426

ALLOSSEDE, ALOSEDE, *p.p.* esteemed, renowned, 3881, 2418

ALLS, ALS, *conj.* as, 1590, 2152, 845, 1617 ; also, 1194

ALLWELDANDE, ALWELBANBE, *adj.* all-ruling, all-powerful, 1059, 397

A LOITER, *adv.* all over, 2027

ALOWE, *V.* praise, commend, 1036 ; 3 *s.* ALOWES, 396

ALYNES, *S. pi.* aliens, 4061

AMANGE, *adv.* from time to time, 1238

AMEBE, *p.p.* estimated, 4068

ANENTIS, *prep,* against, 2568

ANGERS, *V. impers.* 3 *s.* ME ANGERS, I am angry, 1662, 2848

AN LACE, *s.* a short two-edged dagger, broad at the hilt and tapering to the point, 1148

ANTER. *See* AWNTER

APAS, *adv.* pacing, 4014

APPERTE, *adj.* fitting, 688

APPERTLY, *adv.* openly, 1478 ; AITERTLYCHE, skilfully, 589

AR, ARE, *adv.* and *conj.* before, 1722, 331, 518, 2234
ARASE, *V.* snatch away, 4098
ARAYSEDE, *p.p.* made up, 1677
ARBORYE, *s.* shrubs, 3244
ARDANT, ARDAUNT, *adj.* gleaming, flaming, 193, 1087
ARE, *covj.* or, 1944
ARESTE, *S.* check, 1456, 1473; AT ARESTE, at attention, ready, 311, 548
ARESTE, *V.* stop, 3492, 3825; detain, 633
ARRABYES, ARRABYS, *S. pt.* Arabs (horses), 2288, 2337
ARRAYE, AR AYE, *S.* line, 1417, 2136; order, 311, 1207; state, 74, 1665
ARRAYE, ARAYE, *V.* make ready, 4137; 3 *s.* sets in order, 509, 2022, 3 *pi* 3620; *p.p.* ready for battle, 378, 1898, 2655; *p.p.* equipped, 722; in order, 654, 2387; drawn up, 4064
ARRYFEDE, *p.p.* come to shore, 835; ARYEFEDE, 600; ARYUEDE, 3905
As ARMES, to arms ! 2717
ASAWTE, ASAWTTE, ASSAWTE, *8.* assault, 1697, 3012, 3053
As AYE, *s.* examination, 4312
ASAYE, ASSAYE, *v.* try, attempt, 2615, 2347
ASCRYEZ, ASKRYES, *v.* 3 *s.* 1367, 2717; shouts, cries out, *pi.* 1768, 1451; *pret.* 3 *s.* 2772; *p.p.* 2800
ASKYS, *v.* 3 *8.* requires, calls for, 157
ASSINGNEZ, *v.* 3 *s.* assigns, 727; *pret.* ASSINONYDE, 240
ASSOYLLEDE, *p.p.* absolved, 3498
ASTATE, *8.* estate, 684
AT, *prep,* to (with the infinitive), 1165
AT, *pron.* that, 1842, 3484
ATHELISTE, *adj.* noblest, 1593
ATONBERE, *adv.* down, 3180
ATTAMEDE, *V. PREt.* 3 *s.* pierced, 2175
AUGHTE, *v. See* AWE
AUGHTENDE, *num.* eighth, 462
AUNTIRE. *See* ANTER
AL\STEREN, AUSTERYN, *adj.* stern, grim, 306, 670, 1906
AUANTID, *v. pret.* 3 *8.* praised, 1594; *p.p.* AVAUNTEDE, 2864
AvANTTWARDE, AV AWEWARDE, AYAWMEWARDE, AVAWM-**WARDE, AVAWEWARDE, AV**-AWWARPE, *S.* vanguard, 324, 2219, 2024, 4124, 2051, 3764
AVAWMBRACE, *s.* vantbrace, armour for the fore-arm, 2568
AUENAUNT, *adj.* convenient, graceful, handsome, 2626,3208, 3651
AVENTAILE, *s.* the moveable front or mouthpiece of a helmet, 910, 2572
AVENTURE, *s.* chance, fortune, 642
AVIRES, *v.* 3 *s.* turns, 3164
AVISEMENT, *8.* advice, counsel, 148
AVISNELY, Au YS.SE LY, *adv.* warily, prudently, 2699, 3165
AVOWE, *s.* vow, 296, 4040; *pt.* 1983, 2064
AVOWE, *V.* VOW, 357; *p.p.* 369
AUOYEBPYDE, *v. pret.* 3 *s.* quitted, 2051
AVYEDE, *v.* reflex, 3 *pi.* took (their) way, 3716
AWE, *V.* owe, own, 99; AWES, 3 *pi.* 455; OUGHTE, AUGHTE, *pret.* 29, 521; *pret. subj.* 2 *s.* OUGHTEST, 298; used impersonally with sense of obligation or duty, 1583, 3509
AWKE, *adj.* strange, 13

AWKEWABDE, AWKWARDE, *adj.* cross-wise, with a back stroke, 2564, 2247

AWLDE. *See* ALDE

AWNTERE. *See* ANTER

AWNTRENDE, *adj,* daring, bold, 2717

AWNTROUSESTE, *adj.* most daring, 1624

AYELE, *S.* grandfather, 2603

AYERE, AYRE, *S.* heir, 283,2634 ; *pi.* 1740

AYERE, AYRE, *V.* go, 455, 1591 ; 8 *s.* 617 ; 3 *pi.* 1329 ; *pplc.* AYERANDE, 2830

AYWARE, *adv.* everywhere, 614

A3AYNE8, AZAYNEZ, *adv.* against, 786, 2791

BACENETT, BACENETTE, *S.* a light headpiece, usually of steel, closed in front with a ventail or visor, and sometimes worn under the helm, 906, 2770, 4211 ; *pi.* 1754

BACHELERS, BACHELLERS, *S. pi.* the younger knights ; knights following another's banner, 68, 857

BADE, *V. prct.* 3 *s.* abode, 2383

BAGIS, BAGYS, *S. pi.* badges, 2303, 3730

BAISTE, *p.p.* downcast, 2856

BAITE, *V.* feed, graze, 2694

BAKHALFE, *S.* back, 1482

BALE, *S.* grief, hurt, 981, 1426

BALE, *adj.* dire, 1483

BALE-FYRE, *S.* a great fire blazing in the open air; originally a fire to consume the dead, 1048

BALTYRDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* tumbled about, 782

BANARETTES. *See* BANERETTE

BANBEZ, *s. pi.* custody, 1485; straits, distress, 1180

BANEOURE, *S.* banner-bearer, 3782

BANERETTE, *S.* a knight whose banner is followed by a company of men, so distinguished from a 'bacheler' ; a knight who has won honour in the field, 1914 ; *pi.* 68, 567 ; BANARETTES, *pi.* 1403

BANKE, *S.* sea-shore, 4032 ; *pi.* 3714

BARBYCANE, *S.* outer fortification, strong tower at the entrance to a fortified place, 1183, 2470

BARE, *S.* boar, 3123

BARE-HEUYDYS, *S.* ^.boar-heads, 177

BARE-HEUEDE, *adj.* bareheaded, 3630

BARONAGE, *S.* company of barons, 587, 4328

BAROWES, *S. pi.* swine, 191

BARRELL-FERRERS, *s. pi.* vessels for carrying wine or water on horseback, 2714

BARRERS, *S. pi.* defences, 2469

BASSCHEDE, *adj.* cast down, 2121

BATAILE, BATAYLE, BATAYLLE, BATELLE, BAYTAILLE, *8.* battle, battalion, troops in battle array, 783, 3733, 3107, 2476, 4319 ; *pi.* 1618, 2449

BATERDE, *p.p.* done up with batter or pastry, 189

BAWMEDE, *V. pret. pi.* embalmed, 2298 ; *pp.* 980, 4020

BAYTAILLE. *See* BATAILE

BAYTES, *V. 3pl.* bait, 2509 ; *pple.* BAYTAND, 2516, 2671

BE, BEE, *prep,* by, 356, 976, 554

BEBLEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* made bloody, 2250

BECOMMYS, *V. impers. s.* befits, 4317

BEDS, *adj.* 3464. *See* Jamieson, Beddy, "expressive of a quality in greyhounds, the sense unknown."

BEDES, *V.* 3 *pi.* offer, 505

BEDOATT, *s.* going to bed, 1030

BEERYNES. *See* BERNE

-BEKEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* bakes, warms, 1048

BEKENDE, *V.* *pret.* 3 *s.* delivered, entrusted, 2340; *pi.* 2355 ; BEKENNYDE, 3 *s.* committed, 482

BEKNOWE, *V.* *impcrat* 2 *s.* avow, confess, 3867

BEKYN, *s.* signal-fire, 564

BEKYRE, *V.* 3 *pi.* fight, assail with arrows, 3679 ; BEKYRS, 2425; BEKERDE, *prct.* 3 *pl.* 2096

BELDE, r. inhabit, dwell, settle, 8 ; BIELDEZ, 3 *pi.* 1242; BELDYTT, *pret* 3 *s.* 38

BELEFEDE, BELEUEPE, BELEUEFEDE, *p.p.* left, 1250, 2380

BELYFE, BELYUE, *adv.* quickly, at once, 1263, 3732

BENDES, *V.* 3 *pi.* aim, apply, 3036

BENEYDE, *v.pret. Zpl.* (?) "Read bendyde, *v.pret.* bent" (Brock), 2424

BENT, BENTE, *S.* moor, heath, field of battle, 1184, 1380

BERKES, *V.* 3 *8.* breaks out with, 1351

BERNAKES, *s. pi.* barnacle-geese, 189

BERNE, BERYN, BERYNE, BERYNNE, BIERN, BIERNE, BYERN, BYERNE, *s.* man, 962, 116, 3580,1094,2169;pl 255, 148, 2502

BERONEN, BEROWNE, *p.p.* run over with, 3946, 3971

BERYELL, *8.* burial, 1776, 2188

BESAUNTEZ, *S. pi.* round pieces of gold resembling bezant-coins, 3256

BESEKE, *V.* 1 *pi.* beseech, 3 *8.* 305; 3 *pi.* 127; *pret* BESOGHTE, 1234

BESSOMES, r. 3s. sweeps violently, 3661

BESTAILE, *S.* cattle, 1050

BESYE, *s.* business, 3630

BET, *V.* *pret* 3 *pi.* struck out, hauled out, 3656

BETAKYNS, r. 3 *s.* betokens, 822

BETECHE, *V.* *imperat.* 2 *pi.* hand over, commit, 1611 ; 3 *s.* 714 ; *yrrct* BETOKE, 1889 ; BETUKE, 3190, 4015

BETT, *V.* 3 *pi.* beat, 2470, 3682; BETTES, 3 *pi.* 2808

BETYN, *adj.* jinlaid with gold, adorned with repoussé work, 3631, 3945

BEUERYN, *adj.* beaver-coloured, 3630

BEWE, *V.* 3 *pi.* bow, 3366

BEWES, *s. pl.* boughs, 3366

BEWELLS, S. *pl.* bowels, 2175, 2203

BEWSCHEKS, *S. pl.* the lower parts of the body, 1047

BEYLDEDE, *p.p.* built, 566

BIDDIS, v. 3 *pt* offer, 2310 ; 2 *8.* 1014

BIELDEZ. *See* BELDE

BILYNGE, (?) *s.* possibly the beak or prow of a ship, 3668

BIRDE, *8.* woman, 2858; *pi.* 1029; *pi.* BIERDEZ, 1136, BYRDEZ, 999

BIRTENEDE, *See* BRITTEN

BLANKE, BLONKE, *s.* horse, 1799, 2517 ; *pi* 730, 1860 ; BLONKKE8, 1634

BLASONS, *a. pi.* shields, 1860

BLE, BLEE, *s.* colour, 2576, 4213

BLEMESTE, *p.p.* blemished, maimed, 2578

BLBNDEZ, *V.* 8 *s.* is mingled, 1799

BLENKE, *V.* flinch, quail, 3640; 3 *$.* 4213 ; BALK, 2857

BLERYDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* protruded the tongue, 782

BLETHELY, *adv.* blithely, 4147

BLODE, *adj.* bloody, 1860

BLODE-BANDE, *S.* a bandage to stop bleeding, 2576

BLONDIRS, *V.* 2 *s.* makest distracted, 3975

BLONKE. *See* BLANKE

BLYN, BLYNE, *V.* cease, desist, delay, 1931, 3981, 2578

BLYSCHIT, *v. pret.* 3 *s.* cast a glance, 116

BONETTEZ, *s. pi.* additional pieces of canvas laced to the top, later to the foot of a sail, 3656

BORDE, BOURDE, BURDE, *S.* board, table, 79, 1930; Ox BOURDE, 730, WITHIN BOURDE, 3641, on board (ship); *pi* 3194 ; OVER BURDEZ, over board, 3700

BOT, BOTT, BOTTE, *conj.* but, 10, 378, 657 ; except, 521 ; unless, 1925 ; Box IF, BOT ZIF, unless, 356, 3483 ; BOT, *prep,* without, 4070

BOTE, BOTTE, *S.* amends, compensation, 1786, 1837, qualified by 'come,' perhaps as a compound, corne-bote, alluding to some legal and technical definition of ' bote'

BOTELESSE, BOTLES, BUTELESS, *adj.* without remedy, incurable, 981, 3976, 1014

BOTTES, *s. pl.* boats, 748

BOTURES, *8. pl.* bitterns, 189

BOUN, BOWNE, *V.* get ready, set out, go, 936, 1013, 1034 ; 3 *s.* 3591 ; 3 *pl* 1136; *pret* 915 ; BOUNNEZ, 3 *8.* 783

BOURDE. *See* BORDE

BOURDEN, *v.* 3 *pi* jest, make fun, 3122 ; BOUREDEZ, 3 *s.* 1170

BOURE, *S.* the apartment of the lady of the household as distinguished from the public rooms, 2190

BOUSTOUS, BOUSTOUSE, BOYSTOUS, BUSTOUS, rough, powerful, violent, noisy, 2175, 2425, 3762, 783

BOUXOM, BOUXVM, *adj.* yielding, tractable, amiable, 2858, 4147

BOUXSOMLY, *adv.* obediently, meekly, 107

BOWES, *V.* 3 *s.* turns, 2251; BOWES, 3 *pi* give allegiance, follow, 69 ; 3 *pi* go, 2310

BOWES, 3 *pi* shoulders, 188; BOUGHS, 1711, 3247

BOWNN, *adj.* ready, 1633, 2331

BOYSTOUS. *See* BOUSTOUS

BRACE, *V. imperal* 2 *pi* fix firmly, 1182 ; 3 *s.* fastens on tightly, 914

BRACER, *S.* piece of armour covering the arm, 4247 ; BRASERS, *pi* 1859

BRAOGEN, *V.* 3 *pi* blow, sound loudly, 1484 ; 3 p/. 4107 ; *pret.* 3 *pl* 3657

BRAND, BRANDE, BRANNDE, BRONDE, S. sword, 3946, 893, 963, 2566; *pl* 1487, 2309

BRANKKAND, i *pple.* prancing, 1861

BRASTE, *pret.* of briste

BRATHELY, *adv.* furiously, hastily, 1771, 3219

BRAUNCHERS, *s. pi* young hawks, 190

BRAWLES, *v.* 3 5. boasts loudly, 1349

BRAWLYNGE, *8.* fray, 2176
BRAWNE, S, boar, 1095
BRAYD, *V. imperat.* 2 *s.* draw, 1172 ; 3 *s.* 4215, 2069 ; throw off or on quickly, 3 *s.* 906, 2695 ; 3 *pi* 1754 ; rush, move quickly, 3 *s.* 3731, 3125 ; *p.p.* BRAYDEN, flung, 3945
BRAYDE, S. thrust, 3762
BREDE, *S.* bread, 2715
BREDE, S. roast meat, 79, 190 ; *pi.* 1049, 2715
BREDE, S. breadth, 1224, 3656
BREGAUNDEZ, *S. pi.* light-armed, irregular foot soldiers, skirmishers, 2096
BREKLESSE, *adj.* naked, without breeches, 1048
BREME, *adj.* fierce, brave, 1380
BREMLY, BRYMLY, *adv.* shrilly, loudly, 4107 ; fiercely, 117, 4214
BRENE, BRENY, *8.* cuirass, coat of mail, 2253, 1482; *pi.* 2517, 1858 ; BRYNEYS, 4119
BRENYEDE, BRYNYEDE, *p.p.* mailed, 316, 3680
BRESTE, *8.* front line, 1990
BRESTYS. *Sec* BRISTE
BRETH, BRETHE, *s.* wrath, rage, anger, 117, 107, 214
BRETHEMEN, *8. pi.* blowers of wind-instruments, trumpeters, 4107
BRETHLY, *adv.* fieroely, 3661
BRETTYN, *V. See* BRITTEN
BRISTE, *V.* burst, break asunder, 214 ; 3 *s.* BRESTEZ, BRISTYS, BRYSTEZ, 3663, 805, 1482; 3 *pi.* 1859, 3663 ; *pret.* 3 *8.* BRABTE, 2176; 3 *pi.* 2271, BROU8TEN, 2544 ; *p.p.* BRUSTEN, BROUSTEN, 2771, 3974; *weak pret* BRYHTEDDE, 1129
BRITTEN, BRETTYN, BRYTTYN, *v.* 963, 3580, 3641, cut in pieces, slay, destroy; 3s.1242, 3 *pi.* 1862 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 802 ; *3 pi.* 2807 ; *p.p.* 3520 ; BIRTENEDE, *p.p.* cut up game at a hunt, 3972
BROCHE, *V. imperat.* 2 *8.* stab, thrust, 1172 ; 3 *8.* 2202, 4250 ; spurs, 3 s. 918 ; spur, 3 *pi.* 1469 ; *pret.* BROCHEDE, broached, tapped, 2714 ; *p.p.* BROCHEDE, spitted, 1050,1067
BROCHEZ, *S. pl* spits, 1029
BROKBRESTEDE, *adj.* having a breast like a badger, or streaked like a badger's face, 1095
BRONDE. *See* BRAND
BROTHELICHE, BROTHELY, BROTHLY, *adv.* violently, impetuously, hastily, 3640, 1408, 2213, 3617
BROTHY, *adj.* rough, 1090
BROWDDEN, BROWDEN, *adj.* intertwined with metal links, plaited, 2807, 1858
BRUCHEZ, *s. pi.* gems, 3256
BRUSTILS, S. *pi.* bristles, 1095
BRYDDES, *S. pi.* birds, 181
BRYMLY. *See* BREMLY
BRYNE, BRYNNE, *v.* burn, 106, 564 ; 3 *8.* 1241 ; *pret.* 3 *pi.* 117 ; *p.p.* 3520
BRYNEYS. *See* BRENE
BURDE. *See* BORDE
BURGESSE, S. citizen, 3082; *pi.* BURGEYS, 857
BURLICHE, BURELYCHE, BURLYCHE, *adj.* noble, goodly, dignified, stout (of weapons), 2190, 304, 1002, 2239
BURLICHE, *adv.* in state, 4199
Bus, *v. impers.* behoves, 2576
BUBCAYLE, BUSKAYLE,S. thicket, ambush, 895, 1634
BUSCHEDE. *See* BUSKE
BUSCHEMENT, *s.* surprise-party, 3124

BUSKE, *s.* bush, copse, 453, 918 ; *pi.* 1142

BUSKE, BUSCHE, *V.* prepare, arrange, set out, hasten, go, dress, 69, 3579 ; 2 *s.* 962 ; 3 *s.* 1223, 2073 ; 3 *pi.* 1618, 1754; *pret.* 3 *pi.* 1633; *p.p.* 567, 2517 ; BUSKE UIPE, 3 *pi.* set up, 3072

BUTELESS. See BOTELESSE

BYD, BYDE, BYDDE, *V.* bid, ask, 433, 2188, 4323 ; 1 *s.* 2188 ; *imperat.* 2 *s.* 433; 3 *s.* 1776, 2361

BYERNS. *See* BERN

BYGGLY, *adv.* pompously, 1376

BYLEFEDE. *See* BELEFEDE

BYNNE, *prep,* within, 804

BYRRE, *S.* violence, 3661

BYSWENKEZ, *v.* 3 *s.* toils, 1128

CACHEX, r. 3 *pi.* catch, seize, make captive, 834 ; CATCHEZ, 480, *pret.* 1105, KAGHTE, 2636; *p.p.* 3514, KAUGHTE, 2995 ; *p.p.* CACHEPE, chased, 3513

CAFFE, *S.* chaff, worthless refuse, 1064

CAIRE, CAYRE, KAIRE, KAYERE, KAYRE, *V.* go, 877, 1192, 641, 627 ; 3 *s.* 243 ; 3 *pi* 480

CANTELL, *S.* corner-piece, 4231

CAPATOYLLE, CAPITCH LE, S. the Capitol, 2353, 96, 280

CARE, *S.* sorrow, distress, 696, 859 ; KARE, 1838

CAREFULL, *adj.* unhappy, sorrowful, 957, 3131

CARE MAN, *s.* (CARLMAN), man, 957

CARFFES, *S. PL* cuts, wounds, 2713; KERFE, stroke, 4194

CARLE, *S.* fellow, 1063, 1165

CARPE, KARPE, *V.* talk, speak, 2750, 877; *ds. 639;pret.* 143, 220

CARPYNGE, *S.* speech, talking, 1672

CARYAGE, KARYAGE, *S.* baggage, 2355, 2282

CASTE, *V.* design, plan, consider ; throw ; 2 *s.* 261 ; 3 *s.* 4180, 1998 ; *pret.* KIST, 3384 ; 3 *pi.* KESTE, 280 ; *p.p.* CASTYN, 819 ; CASTE THEIRE WITTYS, 2392, revolve in their minds; CASTE IN FEWTERE, cast (a lance or spear) into rest, 3 *s.* 1791, 2165; *3 pl.* 2803

CASTES, *S. pl.* casting-power, 3037

CAWTELOUS, *adj.* crafty, 4185

CERTEZ, CERTYS, *adv.* of a truth, 1162, 1342

CERTYFYE, *a. imperat.* 2 *pi.* inform certainly, 1555

CETÉ, CETEE, *S.* city, 440, 2012; *pi.* 1337, 2609

CIIALANGE, *V. imperat. 2 s.* contest, demand, claim,3326, 3397

CHAMPAYNE, *S.* open expanse of country, 1226, 1362 ; *pi.* 1822

CHANCE, *S.* 1539 ; CHANCE OF ou RE LORDE, fortune given by our Lord

CHAPES, *S. PL,* metal plates, 2522

CHAPYDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* escaped, 4260

CIIARBOKLE, CHAREBOCLE, *S.* carbuncle, 2523, 3326

CHARE, *S.* burden (?) ; CHAYNES OF CHARE, loading-chains (?), 3603

CHARE, *V.* put *in* a wagon or chariot, 1886

CHARGE, *V.* 1 s. appoint, 664 ; *p.p.* CHARGEGIDE, 2731 ; IT CHARGYS BOT LITTYL, it gives little trouble ; 3 *s.* CHARGGES, takes tribute, 3538; *prct.* 3 *pi.* attacked, 1540; *p.p.* freighted, 1549, 3604

CHAKOTTEZ, *S. PL.* chariots, wagons, 1552

CHARRE, *S.* chariot, car, 3914

CHARRY, *adj.* dear, 2964

CHASTYE, *V.* restrain, 1019 ; *p.p.* brought up under discipline, 690

CHASYNGE-SPERE, *S.* hunting-spear, 1823, 2955

CHAUFFEDE, P.P. heated, pressed in the fight, 2236

CHAWFFE, *V.* be injured by heat or friction, 2301

CHAWNES, *S.* chance, 2368

CIIEEFE, *s.* (Her.), the upper part of the shield, 2523 ; CHEFE, 3648

CHEEFE, CHEFE, *adj.* excellent, I of the best, important, 1363, 3603

CHEEKE. *Sec* CHEKKE

CHEKEFULL. *See* CHOKKEFULL

CHEKKE, CIIEEKKE, CHEKE, *S.* check, reverse inllictcd on the foe, 1539, 2956, 3000; attack, 1986

CHEKYRDE, *p.p.* marked in a pattern, 3267

CHELE, *S.* cold, 3391

CIIERE, *s.* lace, expression, 2069, 2964

CHESE, CHEESE, r. choose, choose one's way, proceed, 682 ; 3 *s.* 1225; 3 *pi.* 1619, 1873 ; *p.p.* 2731 ; Chis, 3.9. 2217

CHEITALRYE, *s.* knighthood, chivalry, 18, 169 ; CHEUALLKYE, 531 ; knights, 1404, 2732

CHEUEDE, CIIEFEDE, V. *pret.* achieved, attained to, 869 ; eheuys, *pres.* 3 *s.* 3397 ; *p.p.* fared, thriven, 1117, 1841

CHEWYSE, *V. imperat.* 2 *pi,* find help or safety, 1750

CHILDE, *S.* knight, noble, 2952, 4260; *pi* 4078, CHILPIRE, 1821

CHIPPE, *S.* ship, 1699, 3599 ; *pi* 3546

CHO, SCHO, *pron.* she, 655, 858, 860

CHOKKEFULL, CHEKEFULL, *adj.* chockful, 1552, 3604

CHOKKES, *V.* 3 *s.* thrusts, 2955 ; *p.p.* CHOKKODE, thrust together firmly, 3603

CHTJLLEDE, *p.p.* bandied about, 1444

CHURLES, *adj.* churlish, 4181

CHYMNÉS, CHYMPNÉS, *S. pi.* fireplaces, 168, 3041

CHYNE, *S.* back, 3390

CIRQUYTRIE, CYRQWITRYE, *S.* pride, arrogance, 3399, 2616

CLARETT, *S.* wine of a yellow or light red colour, or wine mixed with honey and spice, 200

CLATHE-SEKKES, *S. pi.* bags for clothes, made to lock and usually of leather, 733

CLAUERANDE, *p.ple.* climbing, 3324

CLEDE, r. pret. 3 *pl.* clothed, 2713 ; *p.p.* CLAD, 217, 3241

CLEFE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* clave, 2559

CLEFFE, *V.* cleave, adhere, 1312

CLEKES, CLEKYS, *V.* 3 *s.* seizes, snatches, pulls, 1865, 1164, 2123

CLENE, *adj.* pure, bright, skilful, 201, 217, 1197, 1603

CLENKKEDE, V. *pret.* 3 *pl.* clanked, 2113

CLENLICHE, CLEXLY, CLENLYCHE, *adv.* entirely, skilfully, artfully, 216, 518/ 757, 1134, 2182

CLEPIP, r. *pret.* 3 *s.* summoned, 3563

CLERE, *adj.* pure, bright, famous, ringing (of sounds), 675, 909, 1601, 1780, 2718

CLEVEWORTE, *S.* prob. the small clover, 3241

CLERGIALL, *adj.* skilful, 1758
CLERGYALLY, *adv.* skilfully, 200
CLERGYE, 5. learning, skill, 809
CLERKIS, CLERKKES, 5. *pl.* scholars, men of learning, 3444, 2391
CLEWES, CLOUGHES, KLEUYS, *s. pi.* cliffs, precipitous sides of a ravine, 1639, 2019, 941, 2396
CLEWIDE, *v. prct.* 3 *pl.* clung, 3268
CLOSE, *S.* confinement, 1586 ; mountain defile, 1639 ; open space enclosed by hills, 3240
CLOSSE, *adj.* secret, 1196
CLOUGHES. *See* CLEWES
CLOWEZ, *S. pi.* claws, 783
CLYFE, CLYFFE, *S.* cliff, 883, 2158; *pi.* CLEYFFEZ, 2019
CLYNGES, *V.* 3 *s.* presses, or CLINKES, moves briskly and suddenly, 1865
COBLEZ, *s.pl.* cables, 742
COGGE, *S.* a ship of war or transport, 476 ; *pi.* 738
COLDIS, *v. 2 s.* makest cold, 3518
COME, *S.* coming, 1203, 1915
COMES, *V. impers.* becomes, befits, 1579
COMON, *v.* confer, discuss, 1580
COMOUNS, *s. pi.* commons, 725, 2353
COMPAS, *S.* circle, 3240 ; outer circle of a wheel, 3268, 3325 ; range, reach, 4222
COMPASTE, *p.p.* encircled, 3633
CONAUNDE, *adj.* skilful, 558
CONDETHE, CoUNDYTE, ClINDIT, *s.* safe-conduct, convoy, 3148, 3483, 475, 444
CONDETHES, *s. pi.* vessels or spouts whence wine issued, 201
CONNYGEZ, *s. pi.* rabbits, 197
CONTEK, CONTEKE, s. strife, **2721, 4177**
CONTENANCE, CONTENAUNCE, *S.* demeanour, appearance, face, 123, 542, 4033
CONYNGE, *adj.* skilled, able, having knowledge (of affairs, etc.), 3202 ; *superl.* 809 ; KoNYNGESTE, 3177
COPE-BORDE, *s.* side-board, 206
COPPE, *8.* cup, 2750
CORAGE, *s.* spirit, valour, 536, 1922
CORENALL. *See* CORONALL
CORKES, *8.* carcase*, 1091
CORNE. *Sec* BOTE
CORNUSE, *s. pl.* horns, 1809
CORONALL, CORENALL, *S.* a circlet of gold or jewels round a helmet or on a lady's head, 908, 3258, 3633
CORROWMPPEDE, *p.p.* Corrupt, 3478
Cons, CORSE, *S.* corpse, body, 1779,1389
ConsAUNT, s. body of a saint, 1164
CORVEN, *p.p. of* KERFE
COSERI, *S.* bargaining, 1582
CoXYNE, KOSYNE, *8.* Cousinl, kinsman, kinswoman, 338, 864 ; *pi.* 50
COTTE, *8.* coat, 1194
COVATYS, *8.* covetousness, 1580
COUGHED, *p.p.* set, 909
CorENT, *s.* convent, 1220
COVER, COUERE, *V.* recover, 859, 3639; reach, get, win, 3425; 3 *s.* 941, 4274, 3643 ; *prct.* 3 *pl.* 274 ; 3 *s.* 858, 2195 : *p.p.* 28
COUERTE, *8.* secret, 1196
COUEKTE, *p.p.* hidden, protected, 1780
COUNDYTE. *See* CONDETHE
COUNGÉ, *8.* leave, 479
COUNTERE, *v.* encounter, 1274 3 *s.* 1848 ; *p.p.* 1893

COUPABLE, *adj.* blameworthy, 1317
COURT AYS, CUIITAIS, CURTAISE, CURT AYES, CURT AYS, *adj.* courteous, 21, 2394, 417, 481, 1318
COUTERE, *s.* armour for the elbow, 2567
COUTHE, *adj.* acquainted with, 21
COWAYTE, *p.p.* coveted, 2397
CowanIDE, *v.pret. dpi.* cowered, 122
COWLE, *s.* a large tub or other vessel, 1051
COWNTERE, accountant, an officer concerned chiefly with the county dues, 1672
COWPE, *S.* cup, 209 ; *pi* 210, 237 ; COUPES, 3375
COWPEZ, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, strikes, 799, 2059 ; 3 *pi.* COWPEN, 2543
CRAFTE, *S.* science, skill, 752 ; (sea-faring) profession, 3667 ; *pi.* power, 24, 284
CRAFTELY, CRAFTYLY, *adv.* skilfully, 3351, 196
CRAFTY, KRAFTY, *adj.* skilfully wrought, 211, 3336
CRASSECHES, *V.* 3 *pl* break violently in pieces, 3670 ; *prel.* 3 *pi.* broke down, 2114, 1109
CRAUANDE, *adj.* craven, 133
CRAYEKS, KRAYERS, *s. pi* small sea-faring craft, 738, 3666
CRAYSED, *p.p.* bruised, battered, 2150
CREDENCE,CREDEXS, CREDENSE, *s.* credentials, 88, 444, 506
CREETE, *S.* wine from Crete, 200
CREPERS, 3 *pl.* grapnels, 3667
CRESMEDE. *See* CRYSMEDE
CRETOYNE, *S.* siuce or pottage, 197
CREWELL, CREUELL, CROWELL, *adj.* fierce, angry, hard, 346, 536, 118, 3086
CROSSE, ONE CROSSE, *adv.* across, 3667
CROSSE-DAYES, *S. pi.* Rogation days, preceding Ascension day, 3212
CROW ELL. *See* CREWELL
CRYSMEDE, CRESMEDE, KRYSOMEDE, *p.p.* anointed with chrism, 1051, 1065, 3185
CRYSUM, KRYSOM, *S.* Chrism, a consecrated unguent, 142, 3435
CUKEWALDE, *S.* cuckold, 1312
CURY, *s.* quarry, cutting up of slain animals at a hunt, 1063

DAGGES, *V.* 3 *pi.* pierce, 2102; *pple.* 3749
DAGSWAYNNES, *S. pi.* coarse, shaggy coverlets, 3609
DALTE. *See* DELE
DAMPNEDE, *p.p.* damned, condemned, 3277, 3299
DARE, *V.* remain motionless as if paralysed, 4007 ; 3 *s.* trembles, 3225
DARIELLS, *S. pi* custards, 199
DAUNCESYNGE, 6. dancing, 2030
DAUNGERE, DAWNGERE, *S.* danger, 1935 ; power to harm, 579, 2935 ; bondage, 3067
DAWEYNG, *S.* dawn, 1601
DAWEZ, *S. pi* days ; DON OF DAWEZ, killed, 2056
DAYNTEUOUS, *adj.* dainty, 4196
DEBLES, *S.* in FY A DEBLES ! flee to the devil, 2934
DF.DE, *S.* death, 1253, 1935
DEDE-THRAWE, *S.* death-struggle, 1150
DEESSE, *S.* dais, 218
DEFADIDE, *p.p.* faded, 3304
DEFAWTES, *V.* 3 *pi.* are in default, 2928

DEFFURE, *S.* = deff[e]nse (?), prohibition, or miswritten for defaute = default, 256

DELE, *V.* deal, distribute, *pret.* 3 *s.* 49 ; *pret. pi.* DALTE, DALTEN, 3693, 2101; *p.p.* DELTE, dispensed, 1564

DEMENYS, *V.* 3 *s.* directs, 1988 ; *Spl.* 4076

DEMYD, DEMY'DE, P,P. estimated, held, 1564, 219 ; decreed, 4158

DEPEZ, *S. pi.* depths, 750

DERE, *V.* hurt, injure, 1783,4200; 3 *s.* 2099

DERE, *adj.* dear, precious, 974, 1216, 3420

DERE, *adj.* brave, 1602, 2043, 2937

DERKFULL, *qdj.* full of grief, 4053

DEREUCHE, DERELY, *adv.* stoutly, 1277; DERKLIOHE DRAW, take a deep draught, 3379

DEREWORTHILY, adv. in a costly manner, 3251

DERFE, *adj.* stout, dreadful, strong, 312, 2937, 3967

DERTFLYCHE, *adv.* grievously, 3277

DERYGE.SE, *S. pi.* dirges, 4017

DESPYNE. *Sec* PORKE DESPYNE

DEVER, *S.* duty, 1940

DEYISEDE, PYUYSEPE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* divided, parted, 3527, 1389

DEUOTLY DEUOTTLY, *adv.* devoutly, 296, 347

DEUYSE, *V.* divide, 2400

DICTOUR, *s.* spokesman, dictator, 712

DIGHTE, DYGHTE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* made ready, 2970 ; 3 *pi.* put, 1253 ; DYGHTLES, 1 *s.* keep in order, 2625; *p.p.* placed, 3066 ; adorned, 3251, 3353

DISCHAYTE, *s.* strategy, deceit, 3789

DTSCOITEROURS, *s. pi.* scouts, 3117

DLSKOUERES, *V.* 3 *pi.* reconnoitre, 3119 ; DISCOTJERES, *wiper.* 2 *pi.* 1641

DISSEUERE, *v.* scatter, 1575 ;3s. divides, 1975 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3529

DiSSPETOUSLYE, DlSPETOUSIA'E, *adv.* mercilessly, 4126, 3159

DISSITTE, *s.* wrath, 3163

DOLUEN, *p.p.* buried, 975

DOUBBYD, *v. pyret.* 3 *s.* dubbed, 48, 3614 ; *p.p.* DUBBYDE, clothed, 3609

DOUCE, *adj.* sweet, 1251

DOWNKYNGE, *s.* dripping, 3248

DOWTE, DOWTLE, S. doubt, fear, 2043, 3225

DOWTTE, *v.* fear, 312 ; *hnperat.* 2 *pi.* BOUT, 3061

DOVVTTOUSE, *adj.* terrible, 3967

DRAFE. *Sec* DRYFFES

DRACOES, *S. PL.* rafts, 3615

DRECIIE, r. 2 *s.* give trouble, hold back, 1504 ; *p.p.* harassed, 811.

DRECHES, *V.* 3,V. delays, remains, tarries, 2040, 4052 ; *3 pl.* 1254; *pref. 3 pl.* 754

DREDLESSE, DKKDLEZ, *adv.* without doubt, 2043,1504 ; indeed, 4053

DREFEX, DREUEN. *See* DRYFFES

DREGIIE, *S.* length, duration, 2915; ON DREGHE, afar, from afar, far off, 787, 3968

DREGHE, DRYE, *V.* last out, endure, 3276, 3437,1632

DREGUELY, *adv.* continuously, deeply (of drinking), 2028

DRENSCHEN, DRYNCHEN, *V.* drown, overwhelm, 761, 816

DRESOE, DRESSE, *V.* set in order (for a battle or journey), go ;

550, 1072 ; 3 *s.* 2833 ; sets up, 2026 ; 3 *pi.* DRISSES, 2473; *pret. Ss.* 786 ; 3 *pl.* 579; *p.p.* 1252 ; DRISSID, decked, 218

DRIGHTEN, DRYGIITTEN, DRYGHTTYN, *s.* the Lord, 4008, 1278, 664 ; *gen.* 664, 1564

DROMONDARIES, *S. pl.* dromedaries, 2286

DROMOUNDES, *S. pl* large ships, 3615

DROUPE, V. droop, remain dejected, 4007

DRYE, *V. See* DREGHE

DRYFFES, *V.* 3 *pl.* rush, drive, 2757 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* DRAFE, 787 ; 3 *pl* DREUEN, 2914 ; *p.p.* DREFEN, 3224

DRYNCIIEN. *See* DRENSCHEN

DRYSSEDE. *See* DRERCE

DUCHEHYE, *s.* duchy, 2400 ; *2Ml.* 3614, DUCHERES, 1728, DowCHERYS, 49

DUELLE, *v.* ahide, tarry, 3067 ; *pret.* 3 5. 219 ; *pple.* 3443 ; *p.p.* 1200

DULE, *s.* dole, 701, 3915

DULE-COTES, *s. pl-* mourning garments, 4336

DUSPERES, DITSPERS, DITSSEPEREZ, DuZSEPEKEZ, DUSZEPERIS, DUSSZEPKRIS, *S. pl* illustrious knights, originally the twelve noble peers of Charlemagne, 66, 145, 2029, 723, 3751, 4336

DYKED, *p.p.* buried, 975

DYNT, DYNTE, DYNTT, *S.* stroke, blow, 2183, 3611, 1505 ; *pl* 1253

DYSPENS, 5. supplies, liberal giving, 538

DYSSAUYDE, *p.p.* imposed upon, 683

EFTE, *adv.* again, 470, 2349

EGERLY, EGYRLY, *adv.* angrily, violently, fiercely, 337, 1499

EGHELYNGE, adv. edgeways, 3675 .

EGHEN, EGHN, EGHNE, EUGHNE, EYGHEN, EYGHN, EYNE, *S. pl.* eyes, 3790,116,1920, 3985, 1083, 3282

EGREE, *adj.* eager, 507

EKE, *conj.* 44, 674

EKKEN, *V.* increase, 2009 ; ekys, 3 *s.* 3965

ELAGERE, 2977 "is certainly miswritten. The alliteration requires si . . . ; perhaps we ought to read sleyghte, skill, dexterity "(Brock), or slahtere, slaying

ELBE, *S.* old age, 4220 ; *pl* ages, 301

ELDERS, ELDYRS, *S. pl* ancients, ancestors, 13, 99, 293

ELFAYDES, *S. pl* animals of some kind, 2288

EMANGE, *prep,* among, 2060

EME, *S.* uncle, 1347

ENANGYLLS, *V.* 3 *s.* drives into a corner, or surrounds with troops disposed in an angular figure, 3781

ENARMEDE, P.P. fitted, equipped, 910

ENBRACES, ENBRASSEZ, *V.* 3 *pl* fit on the arm, 4111, 1753 ; *p.p.* 2518

ENBUSCHEMENT, 5. ambush, 3115

ENBUSCHES, *V.* 3 *s.* places in ambush, 1981; *p.p.* 1403,1712

ENCLINES, *S. pl.* bows, 83

ENCOROWNMENTES, *S. pl.* coronation-ceremonies, 4197

ENCROCHE, *V.* seize, win, take, 3212 ; 3 *s.* 1243 ; *pret.* 3 *pl* 2036

ENCROYSSEDE, *v. pret. 3 pl.* made the sign of the cross, 4112

ENDENTE, ENDENTTYD, *p.p.* indented (Her.), 2052, 3297
ENDORDIDE, *p.p.* coloured yellow with egg or saffron, or covered with a yellow glaze, 199
ENEWE, ENOWE, *ado.* enough, 2657, 504
ENFEBLESCHES, *V.* 3 *pl.* grow feeble, 2484
ENFLURESCHIT, *p.p.* decked out with ornaments, 198
ENFORCE, ENFORSSE, *V.* reinforce, 364 ; *impend.* 2 *pl.* strive, 225
ENGENDERDE, *p.p.* begotten, 843
ENGENDURE, *S.* parentage, begetting, 3743
ENGLAYMEZ, r. 3, make slimy, 1131
ENGLAYMOUS, *adj.* venomous, 3684
ENGOWSCHEDE, *p.p.* ? 2053
ENGRELEDE, *p.p.* (Her.), engrailed, 4182
ENGYNES, ENGEYNES, S. *pl.* large weapons for assault, catapults, rams, 2481, 3036, 2423
ENGYSTE, *V.* assign resting-places or lodgment, 445
ENHORILDE, *p.p.* edged, 3244
ENJOYNES, ENJOYNYS, *V.* 3 *pl.* join in company, 2897, 4109 ; *prct.* 3 5. engaged, 2087
ENKERLY, *adv.* heartily, ardently, 507, 2066
ENNELLED, *p.p.* annealed, enamelled, 1294
ENPEYREDE, *p.p.* impaired, 474
ENSEGE, ENSEGGE, *V.* besiege, 441,1337; 3 s. 623; *p. p.* 1696
ENSERCIIEDE, *p.p.* "readenserclede, encircled " (Brock)
ENSERCHES, *V.* 3 *s.* examines, 4311 ; 3 pl. search, 2466
ENSURE, *V.* guarantee, assure, 1689 ; 1 *s.* 3734
ENTAMEDE, *V. prct.* 3 *s.* cut, wounded, 2203; *p.p.* 1160, 2708
ENVERYDE? *p.p.* 1. 1691 appears to be confused with 1694
ENVYOUK, *adj.* actuated by ill-will, revengeful, 2047
ERBERIS, *S. pl.* walks shaded with trees, 3425
ERCHEUESQUES, *S. pl.* archbishops
ER LES, *s. pl.* on deposit, as a pledge, 2687
ERNE, *S. pl.* ears, 1086
ERRAAVNTE, *adj.* arrant, 2895
ESCIIEFFE, *v.* gain their end, be successful, 2301 ; ESCJIEUE, achieve, 3347 ; *prct.* 3 *pl.* 1620 ; *p.p.* ESCHEWEDE, 1539
ESCIIEUEDE, ESCHEWYDE, r. *prct.* 3 *s.* befell, 3000, 2956 ; *p.p.* 3021, 3027
ESCHICWES, *c.* 3 *s.* stands back, avoids, 1116; *prct.* 3 *pl.* retreated, 1881 ; *imperaL* 2 *pl.* 1750
Esterne, KSTYRE, *s.* Easter, 1006, 554
ETHENYS, ETHYNS, *S. pl.* giants, 4163, 4123
ETTYLL, *V.* 1 *s. reflex,* intend, 554 ; 3 6\ ET LES, purposes, determines, 3u77, Err ELLS, 520
EIIERICHE A, EUEIULK A, *adj.* every, 2037, 212
Ens. *See* EYUES
EWYN, *S.* evening, 1006, 1788
KYGHEN, EYNE. *See* EGHEN
EYUES, EYUIS, EYUYS, EUIS, EUYS, *s.* edge, outskirt, 1283, 1760, 2516, 1879, 2886; brow of a hill, 3466

FAAMEN, *S. pl.* foemen, 303
FADIRE, FADYR, FADYRE, *S.* father, 3432, 112, 1169

FADOM, *s.* fathom, 1102
FAGHTE. *See* FEGHTE
FAIRE, *adj.* fairer, 3306
FAKEN, *V.* 3 *pl.* coil, 742
FALOW, *adj.* brown, yellow, 1402
FALOWEDE, *p.p.* grown pale, 3954
FALSEDE, FALSSEDE,S. falsehood, error, 3918, 2860
FALTEBEDE, *V. pret. 3 pl.* quivered, 1092
FANDE, FAWNBE, FONDE, *V.* try, proceed, 984 ; *impcrai.* 2 *s.* 867 ; taste, 3370 ; see to it, 656 ; FONODE, taste, 205 ; 3 *pl* 747
FABEWAYE, *S.* course, 1357
FABLANDE, *S.* foreland, 880
FABLY. *See* FEKLY
FAUCETEZ, *S. pl.* taps, 205
FAUNGE, *V.* take, receive, 425 ; 3 *s.* FANGEZ, 1005, 1249
FAWE, *adj.* sparkling, 717
FAWNTKYN, *s.* little child, infant, 2440, 2736 ; *pl.* 845
FAWTE, *S.* default, 160 ; fault, 2737
FAWUELL, *s.* a fallow-coloured horse, 2765
FAX, *s.* hair, 1078
FAY, FEY, FEYE, *adj.* at the point of death, fated to die, 394, 517, 1912, 2847
FAYE, *S.* faith, 2842, 4252
FAYFULLY, *adv.* faithfully, 1715
FAYLED, *p.p.* 3308, possibly a mistake, = "faldede, folded" (Brock)
FAYNE, *adj.* glad, 1160
FAYTHEBLY, FAITHELY, *adv.* assuredly, 3864, 4031
FECCHEDE, *v. iwet.* 3 s. fetched, 169; *p.p.* 111, 437
FEEMEN, *a. pl.* men working for hire, 2488
FEGHTE, FYGHTE, r. fight, 367, 1345 ; 3 *s.* 789 ; 3 *pl.* 1495 ; *prct.* 1 *s.* FAGHTE, 1174, 3 *pl* FATCHTE, 2164 ; *pple.* 4066, 4121 ; *p.p.* 3019
FEKILL, *adj.* false, 2860
FELE, *V.* hide, 3237
FELE, *adj.* many, 845, 2092
FELEDE, *V. prct.* 3 *pl.* felt, 1874
FELETEZ, FRLETTES, *S. pl* loins, 1158, 4237
FELEWES, *V.* 3 *2d.* follow, 2758
FELEYGHES, *S. pl* fellies, outer rims of a wheel, 3308
FELL, *S.* skin, 1081
FELL, *S.* wild moorland, 2489, 2502
FELL, *adj.* fierce, ruthless, 1401, 2769
FELLY, *adv.* fiercely, 2141
FELSCIIEN, *V.* make good ? 1975
FENDE, *S.* fiend, devil, 881, 1038; *pl* 612
FENTE, *S.* opening of the mantle at the chest ? 4249
FENYSTE, *p.p.* 'finished, 4254
FERANT, FERAUNT, FEBAWNTE, *adj.* iron-grey, 2259, 1811, 2451
FERCOSTEZ, *S. pl.* ships or boats, 743
FERDE, *p.p.* afraid, 403, 2438
FEUDE, *s.* fear, 3237
FERDNESSE, *S.* fear, 121, 2258
FERE, 1232. *See* FERRE
FERE, *adj.* sound, unhurt, 2796, 3017
FERKE, FERKEX, FEBKKE, *V.* move, go quickly away, 984, 2071, 2257 ; 3 *s.* 933, 2900; *pple.* 1452
FERLY, FERLYCHE, *adj.* strange, marvellous, 2842, 925
FERLY, FARLY, *S.* wonder, 2440, 2485
FERMES, FERMEZ, *S. pl.* rents, tribute, 425, 1005

FERMYSON, *S.* the closed season for the male deer, 180
FERRE, FERE, *adj.* far, distant, 3547, 1232 ; BE FERRE, by far, 1176 ; OF FERRE, afar, 2096 ; *comp.* 1496 ; *super I,* 2741
FERROM, *adj.* foreign, 3578 ; 0 FERROM, afar, 856, 2100
FERS, FERSE, *adj.* fierce, 2161 ; 1451, 1537
FERTHE, *num.* fourth, 3412
FERTIIYNGES, *S. pl.* small pieces of metal like farthings, 3472
FERYNE, *adj.* foreign, 3711
FERYNNE, *S.* fern, 1875
FESEDK, *p.p.* driven off, 2842
FESTE, *adj.* fast, firm, 2142
F EST EN ESSE, *V.* 3 *s.* fastens, 1118; *Zpl.* 934
FETRLED, *p.p.* arranged, laid out, 2149
FETTE, *V.* fetch, 557
FEUERZEKE, *S.* February, 436
FEWE, *adj.* brown, fallow, 2502. *Sec* JAMIESON, fauch, faugh, fewe
FEWLE, *S.* fowl, bird, 2071; *pl.* 926
FEWTEE, *S.* fealty, 112
FEWTERE, FEWTIRE, FEWTYRE, *s.* rest or support for a lance, 1991, 2803
FEWTERS, *V.* 3 *s.* easts the lance or spear in FEWTER, 3775 ; *p.p.* with lances in rest, 1711, 1756
FEY. *See* FAY.
FEYEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* wiped, 1114
FEYNE, *V.* feign, 1913 ; *impcrat.* 2 *pl.* flinch, 1734
FICHENE, *v.* 3 *pl.* plerce, 2098 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 4289
FIFTE, *num.* fifth, 3306
FILLEDE, *p.p.* satisfied, 1032
FILSNEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* lurks, 881
FlLTEREDE, FILTYRPE, *p.p.* matted together, 1078 ; tangled, 780 ; clotted, 2149
FIRTHE, FYRTHE, 5. deer forest; open space between forests and thickets, unused common, 1708,1875,2144 *pl.* FRITHEZ, 924
FISCJIE-IIALLE, *adj.* whole as a fish, 2709
FITT, *v.* array, set in order ; 3 *s.* 1755, 2072 ; 3 *pl.* 2139 ; *p.p.* 2455, FETTEDE, 4067
FLAMMANDE, FLAWMANDE, *pplc.* gleaming, flaming; resplendent, 198, 945, 1365
FLAITES, *V.* 3 *s.* strikes, 2781
FLAWES, FLAWEZ, *s. pl.* blasts, 773 ; flakes, 2556
FLAY, *r.* Hoy, frighten, 2779 ; *p.p.* 2441
FLAYRWE *s* odour, 772
FLERTE, *V.* float, 803 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* 3602
FLEMEDE, FLEMYDE, *p.p.* put to flight, banished, 2738, 1155
FLENOES, *V.* 3 *ft.* rushes, dashes, 2762 ; *pplc.* FLYNGANPE, 2757
FLERYANDE, *pplc.* grinning, grimacing; sneering, 1088, 2778
FLESCIIEZ, *V.* 3 *pl.* flisk, fly about, 926
FLETEREDE, *p.p.* scattered, 2097
FLETHE, .V. ? 2482
FLIEGHES, *V.* 3. .v. flies, 4002
FLITT, r. 3 *pl.* contend, fight, 2097
FLOKE-MOWTJIEDE, *p.p.'* having a flat mouth like a fluke or flounder, 2779, *cf.* 1. 1088
FLONES, *S. pl.* arrows, 3619, 2097
FLORENEZ, *S. pl.* certain gold coins, 885
FLORES, *S. pl.* open spaces, meadows, 2694, 3249
FLORESCHE, *V.* flower, flourish, 3 *pl.* 2555 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* 2346 ; *p.p.* adorned, 771, 1708, 3472,

924 ; FLURISTE, thriven, well-nourished, 180
FLOURDELICE, *S.* fleur-de-lis, 3333
FLO WE, *v. pret.* 3 *s.* flew, 772, 2100
FLOYNES, *S. pl.* small ships, 743
FLYNGANDE. *See* FLENGES
FLYSCHANDE, *ppl.* slashing, 2141 ; FLYSCHES, *V.* 3 *s.* slashes, cuts, 2768
FLYTTYNGE, *S.* contest, 2099
FODDENID, *p.p.* produced, 3247
FOLDE, FOULDE, FOWLDE, *S.* earth, 315, 1071, 3302
FOLE, *s.* horse, 449, 2783
FOLILY, *adv.* foolishly, 2841
FOLOUS, *v.* 3 *pl.* follow, 1360
FONDE. *See* FYNDE
FONDE, FONODE. *Sec* FANDE
FOODE, *s.* creature, man, 3776
FOONDE, *v.* go 366, 24S9. *See* FANDE
FORMUTTENEDE, *p.p.* cut up, slaughtered, 2273
FORCHIPE, *s.* foreship, 3678
FORCYERE, *adj.* stronger, 1176
FOUPKEMYDE, *p.p.* wearied by dreaming, 3392
FORE-IUIESTE, *s.* front part, 1990, 1494
FOREBRTJSTEN, *p.p.* burst, 2272
FORELYTENEDE, *p.p.* diminished, 254
FOREMAGLEDE, *p.p.* mangled, 1534
FORE-STAYNE, *s.* prow of a ship, 742
FORETOPPE, S lock of hair growing above the forehead, 1078
FORETRAUAILLEDE, PP. fatigueil, worried, 806
FORFOUGHTTEN, *p.p.* worn out with fighting, 3792, 4179
FORHEUEDE, *s.* forehead, 1080
FORJUSTE, FORJUSTEDE, FORJUSTYDE, *p.p.* overcome in a joust, defeated, 2895, 2134, 1398 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 2088, 3 *pl.* 2908
FORMAYLL, *s.* the female hawk used in sport, 4003
FORRAYE, *v.* plllage, search for forage or booty, raid, 2489; 3 *s.* FORRAYSE, 1247 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* 3017; *p.p.* 3019.
FORREOITRS, *s. pl* foragers, foregoers, 2450, 3017
FORSAKE, *V.* deny, decline, refuse, give up, 2734, 1945 ; *imperat. 2 pl* 1686
FORSESY, *adj.* powerful, 3300, 3307
FORSETT, FORESETT, *p.p.* barred the way, beset, 2012, 2018, 1714, 2161
FORSTERNE, *s.* part of the ship before the steering-gear, 3664
FORTETHE, *s.* front teeth, 1089
FOR|;ERMASTE, FORTIIIRMASTE, *adv.* first, 1365
FORTHES, FORTIUS *V.* 3 *s.* leads (of a road), 2827, 1850
FORPI, FORTHY, FORETHT, *adv.* therefore, 152, 1172, 3009
FORTHIRE, *v.* assist, favour, 300, 1509
FORTHYNKKES, *V. impers.* 3 s. it forthynkkes me, I regret, repent, 971, 4252
FORTROPYN, *p.p.* trampled down, 2150
FOTEMEN, *S. pl.* infantry, 1989
FOULE, FULLE, *adv.* foully, adversely, 3304, 1154, 2436
FOUND, *V.* go, journey, 1189 ; *imperat. 2 s.* 452 ; 3 *pl.* 495, 3112; *pret. dpl.* 1442
FOURTE, *num.* fourth, 3300
FOURTEDELE, *S.* quarter, 946
FOVVLDE. *See* FOLDE
FOYLE, *S.* leaf of fine gold used as a wrapper, 2704

FOYNES, *v.* 3 *pl.* thrust, 1494, 2163 ; *pret.* 1 *pl.* 1898
FRA, FRO, *prep,* from, 7, 1233
FRAISEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* frightens, 1248
FRAISTE, FRAYSTE, *V.* try, test, put to the proof; search; ask ; *imperat.* 2 *s.* 435, 3395 ; 3 5. 1227 ; *pp.* 2774
FRAKNEDE, *p.p.* marked with freckles, 1081
FRANSYE, *S.* frenzy, 3826
FRAPE, FRAPPE, *S.* company, hand, 2804, 2091, 3548
FRAPPEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* strikes, 1115
FRAUNOHES, .s. privilege, riglit of asylum, 1248
F'RAWGHTE, *p.p.* laden, 3547
FUAVVNKE, *s.* enclosure, 3247
FRAYEDE, *p.p.* frightened, 2260
FRAYNES, *V.* 3 *s.* asks, enquires, 3865, 337, 1441
FRE, FREE, *adj.* noble, 1711, 3247
FIIECIIELY, *adv.* eagerly, 3691
FREELY, FRELY, FRELICHE, *adj.* goodly, noble, beautiful, 3330, 970, 3808 ; *adv.* 2072, 2142
FREKE, *S.* man, fellow, 1061, 1174 ; *pl.* 742, FKKKKES, 1360
FREKE, FREKKE, *adj.* bold, 2821, 2454 ; *super?..* 1536, 2161
FREELY, FREKKELY, *adv.* boldly, 1360, 3927
FREMDLY, FREMEPLY, FREMYDLY, *adv.* strangely, unkindly, 2738, 1250, 3405
FREMMEDE, *adj.* unpropltious, 3343
FRENCHEPE, S. (?) friendship, 656, *ef.* SCHEN'CHIPE
FRESCHE, *adj.* brisk, 2501
FRESCHELY, FRESCHELICHE, FRESCLY, FRESCLYCHE, *adv.* eagerly, vigorously, gaily, 3775, 4249, 2097, 2900
FRESON, *S.* a Friesland horse, 1365
FRETEN, P, P. adorned, 2142
FRETTE, *p.p.* rubbed, 2078
FRETYN, *p.p.* devoured, 844
FIUTHED, FRYTHEP, *p.p.* fenced or hedged in, 656, 3247
FIUTHEZ, *s. pl. See* FIRTHE
FROMONDE, *S.* (?) FORMONDE (?), something protecting the front of the face (?), 1112
FROSKE, *s.* frog, 1081
FROUNT, FROWNTE, FRUNT, *8.* front ; face ; brow ; first line of battle, 3330, 1756, 4122, 1112
FROU'NTERE, s. boundary; opposing line; front battle-line, 2861, 2898
FIOYTE, *s.* fruit, 2707 ; *pl* 3246
FPUMENTEE, *S.* a dish of wheat boiled in milk and seasoned, 180
FRUSCHE, *s.* rush, charge, 2900
FRUSCHEN, *V. 3 pl.* rush, charge, 2804
FRYKIS, *V.* 3 *pl.* move briskly, 2898
FRYTHES, *V. S. pl.* spare, 2159 ; *imperat.* 2 *pl.* 1734 ; FYRTHE, *inf.* 3370
FUEL. *Sec* Foule
FULL, *adv.* fully, 2343
FULKOMESTE, *adj.* foulest, 1061
FUNNDEN, *p.p.* found, 1176
FURTHE, *s.* ford, 1714, 1897
FURTHE, *adv.* forth, 262, 2420
F Y , *V.* Hee, 2934
FYCHE, *V.* fix, dispose, 2162
FYGURED, 2151; Branscheid suggests " fygures [on] folde"
FYLEDE, *p.p.* defiled, 978
FYRTHE, *V. Sec* FRYTHES.
FYSNAMYE, FYSSNAMY, *S.* physiognomy, face, 1114, 3331

GADDES, GADDYS, *s. pl.* goads, pricks, 3621, 3683

GADLYNGES, GEDLYNGES, *S. pl.* worthless fellows, 2443, 2884
GALEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* sang, 927
GALTE, *S.* boar or hog, 1101
GALYARDE,"! *adj.* debonair, valiant, 721, 1470, 2949
GAMEN, *S.* game, 2811 ; *pl.* GAMNES, sports, 1730, 3174
GANGGYNGE, *S.* going, 706
GARDWYNES. *See* GWERDONS
GARETTE, *S.* watch-tower, 562, 3104
GARNESCHIT, GARNERCHT, *p.p.* furnished with arms ; trimmed; 722, 563, 1000
GARNTSON, GAJIYSON, *S.* defence, garrison, 3105, 2655, 3007
GARTE, *pret.* of GERE
GAS, *V.* 3 *s.* goes, 3006
GATE, S. going, course; road ; 4144, 4308
GAYNE, *V.* avail, 165 ; 3 *s.* 4303 ; *Spl.* benefit, 1731
GAYNEST, *adj.* shortest, quickest, 487, 3114
GAYSPANDE, *pple.* gasplng, 1462
GEDYRE, *V.* 3 *pl.* gather, 592 ; *p.p.* GEPERYDE, GADERIDE, 721, 3295; GADERYDE, *pret. dpl.* 594
GEMOWS, *S. PL.* jointed parts, 2894
GENATOURS, *S. pl.* soldiers riding jennets, 2897
GERE, *V.* cause, make, 3640 ; 3 *s.* 3592; *pret.* GERTE, GARTE, *3 s.* 1780, 3709
GERE, *S.* gear; armour; stores ; 2539, 3008
GEREFAWCON, *S.* a large falcon, 4004
GERSOMS, *S. pl.* gifts, treasure, 165, 1729
GESSENANDE, *adj.* (Her.)jessant, appearing to emerge from the middle of a shield, 2521
GESSERAWNTE, JESSERAWNT, JESSERAWNTE, *S.* coat of splint armour, 2892, 904, 4238 ; *pl.* 2909
GESTES, *S. pl.* tales of adventure and heroic deeds, 2876
GETTLESSE, *adj.* without "gett" or gain, 2727
GETYN, *p.p.* got, 886
GHYWES, 5. *pl.* gyves, fetters, 3621
GIFE, GIFFE, *conj.* if, 2630, 2623
GIRDE, *V.* smite, strike, 3709 ; 3 5. 1370, 2563; *pret.* 3 *s.* 2791 ; *p.p.* 3938
GIRSE, *s.* grass, 3944
GLADE, *pret.* of glide, 2972
GLAXTERANDE, *ppl.* talking foolishly, 2538
GLAYFE, *S.* lance, or a long blade fixed on a staff, 3761
GLEDYS, *S. pl.* live coals, embers, 177
GLENT, 6. an awkward stroke, 3863
GLENTES, GLENTTYS, *V.* 3 *s.* strikes obliquely; passes quickly, 4244, 2563, 2780
GLETERANDE, P*pl'* glittering, 595, 3097
GLIFTIS, GLYFTES, *V.* 3 *s.* looks, 3949, 2525
GLOPPYNYNG, *s.* fright, dread, 3863
GLOPYNE, *V.* frighten, be distressed or dismayed, 2580; 3 *s.* GLOPNEPE,1074 ; *imperat. 2 pl.* 2853 ; *pple.* 4329
GLOHEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* glared, 1074
GOBBEDE, *adj.* boastful, 1346
GOBELETS, *s.pl.* small ornamental balls, 913
GOBONE, *V.* 3 *pl.* cut up into gobbets, 4164

GOLE, *S.* gully, water-channel, 3725
GOLET, *s.* gullet, 1772
GOME, GUME, *S.* man, 85, 1773, 3409 ; *pl* 2538, 3683
GORGE, *S.* front of the neck, 3760
GORGERE, 5, armour for the gorge or throat, 1772
GORRE, *s.* dung, 1130, 1370
GOSESOMERE, *.v.* gossamer, 2687
GOWCES, *s. pl.* for GOWTES (Her.), coloured drop-shaped figures, 3759,
GOWKE, *S.* cuckoo, 927
GOWLES, *s.* (Her.), gules, 3759, 3945
GRAME, *S.* wrath, vexation, 1077, 3008
GRANKS, *v.* 3 *ft.* groans, 2562
GRAPE, *V. imperat.* 2 *pl.* grope, search, 2725
GRASSEDE, *p.p.* fattened, fat, 1091
GRAYHONDES. *Sec* GREHOWNDE
GRAYNES, *S. pl.* small globules in gems or metal, 913, 3163
GRAYTHE, *V.* make ready, convey, proceed, advance ready for battle ; 2 *s.* 2539 ; 3 *pl.* 1279 ; *imperat.* 1 *pl.* 1303 ; *imperat.* 2 *pl.* 1266 ; 3 *s.* 1353, 2124 ; *p.p.* 602, 3096
GRAYTHELYCHE, GRAYTHELY, GRAYTHLY, *adv.* readily, 722, 1774, 1000
GRAYTHELY, *adj.* suitable, fitting, 187
GRAYTHESTE, *adj.* most skilful, ablest, 1201
GRE, GREE, *S.* favour, prize, victory in combat, 2645, 4298, 2748, 3706
GREES, *S.* the fat of deer distributed among sportsmen at the hunt, 658
GREFFEDE, *prct.* 3 *pl.* grieved, 1463
GREHOWNDE, GREWIIOUNPE, *S.* grayhound, 3464, 1075, 4001 ; *pl.* 1730, GRAYHONDES, 2521
GREKKES, *adj.* Grecian, 594
GRENNEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* grinned, 1075
GRESSE, *s.* grass, 1131. (T. GIRSE
GRETE, *V.* weep ; 3 *s.* 2962 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* GRETTE, 3790; *pple.* GRETANDE, 951
GREITE, *S.* grove, 2540; *pl.* bushes, trees, 927; GREFES, 2881
GREAVES, *S. pl.* ditches or trenches, 1874
GRISELY. GRYSLY, GUYESLYE, GRYSELYCHE, *adj.* and *adv.* grisly, horrible, horribly; 3105, 3950, 1075, 1469, 1373
GROFFE, GROTFFE, GROWFFE, in adverbial phrase on GROFFE, etc., flat on the ground face downwards, groveling, 3850, 3944, 3869
GROME, *s.* man, 3489; serving-man, 2526
GROUNDEN, GROWNPEN, GRTTNDYN, *p.p.* ground, sharpened, 2972, 4162, 1461
GRUCHE, GROUCHE, GRUDGE, *V.* murmur at, grieve ; *impcrat.* 2 *s.* 706, 2644 ; *prct.* 3 *s.* GRYCHGIDE, 2557 ; *pple* 1076, 1462
GRYFFOUNE, *S.* griffin, 3869
GRYGYNGE, *S.* dawn, 2510
GlIYLYCH, *adj.* GRY[s]LYCH, terrible, 1101
GUCHEDE, *adj. See* Note, 3937
GUMBALDES, *.s. pl.* (?) 187
GUME. *See* GOME
GUYTE, *s.* youth, 2963
GWERDONS, GWERDDOWNS, GARDWYNES, *s. pl.* rewards, 4277, 2820, 1729

GYE, *V.* guide, lead, 4; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3860

3A, *adv.* yea, 993, 1033

ZALDSONS, *s.* synonym for devil, 3809

ZAPELY, *adv.* promptly, 1502

3EE, *v.* 3911; "perhaps mis-written for Zexes,sobs" (Brock)

ZEFFE, *conj.* if. *See* 31F

JELDE, *v.* yield, 1502 ; 3 5. 3809 ; *p.p.* ZELDEN, ZOLDEN, 2334, 2482

ZEME, *v. imperat.* 2 *s.* take care of, guard, observe, 1503 ; 3 *s.* 430, 938 ; 3 ; pl. 647

ZERDE, *s.* yard, 3254, 3280

ZERMYS, *v.* 3 *s.* grieves, 3911

ZERNE, *adv.* eagerly, 1794, 3325

ZERNEZ, *v.* 2 *s.* yearnesi for, desircst, 1502 ; 3 *s.* 1032 ; *p.p.* 2343

ZIF, 3IFF, 31FFE, 3EFFE, *Conj* if, 340, 104, 4153, 2859

ZIF, ZIFE, ZIFFE, *v.* give, 1668 ; 1 *s.* 1567, 2323

ZOLDEN. *See* ZELDE

ZOLE, *s.* Yule, 2628

ZOMANE, *s.* yeoman, gentleman attendant in a royal houshoId, . 2628

HABYDES, *V.* 3 *s.* abides, wais for, 596 ; 3 *pi.* remain, 1431

HAILSEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* salutes, 1058

HAKENAYES, HAKKENAVS, HAKNAYS, *s. pl.* hacks, riding-horses, 484, 2284, 734

ITALDE, r. hold, 424 ; 3 *s. 64* ; *pret.* 3 *s.* HELPE, 1196 ; *p.p.* HALDEN, 534

HALE, *V.* 3 *pi.* haul, 748

HALE, HALLE, HOLE, HOLLE, *adj.* whole, 2149, 2651, 2661, 3637

HALELY, HALEY, HOLLY, *adv.* wholly, 764, 1101, 748

HALFES, HALUES, *S. pl.* halves, parts, sides, 1853, 3530

HALOWES, *V.* 3 6. shouts out, 3319

HALS, *S.* neck, throat, 764 ; *pl.* 1798

HALY, *adj.* holy, 309

HAME-HOLDE, *adj.* domestic, home-bred, 1843

HANDSOMERE, *adj.* readier to hand, 2128

HANSEMAN, S. henchman, groom, 2662

HAPPEN, V. meet with, 3433

HAPPYNGE, *S.* good fortune, 3958

HARAGEOES, *adj.* stern, violent, 1645, 1878

HARAWDE, HAWRAWDE, *S.* herald, 2294, 3013

HABBERGAGE, HERBERGAGE, *S.* inn, quarters, 2475, 3014

HARDE, *pret.* 3 *s.* heard, 1285

HARDLY, *adv.* sharply, 1084

HAHLOTTE, *S.* vagabond, knave, 2446; *pl.* 2743'

HARNAYSE, *S.* equipment, 2629

IIARRAWNTE, *adj.* hurrying, 2449

UAKSKE, *adj.* rough, 1084

HATIIELL, S. man, 358

HATHEEL, *adj.* noble, worthy, 3501 . supeib, 988, 2109

HAUNDE-BREDE, *s.* handbreadth, 2229

HAWBERKE, *S.* a long military tunic, commonly of chain-mail, 1156, 2700

HAWK, *s.* enclosed place in a ship, 3704

HAWLE, *S.* hall, 3*79

HAWTAYNE, *adj.* haughty, valant, 1058, 3029

HAYLEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* reached, 2077

HAYTHEMEN, S. *pl.* heathen, 2295

HEDDE, *V.* behead, 2311
HEDDYS-MEN, *S. pl.* chief men, 281
HEDE-RAPYS, *S. pl.* stays of a mast, 3668
HEDIRE, *adv.* hither, 2611
HEDLYNGS, *adv.* headlong, 3829
HEDOYNE, *S.* (?) 184
HEDYRWARDE, *adv.* hitherward, 25
HEGHE, HEY, HYE, *adj.* high, 158, 39, 3467 ; ON HEIOHE, *adv.* on high, aloft, 2476, 2651
HEGHE, 1146. *See* HEGHTE
HEGHELY, *adv.* zealously, 2294
HEGHTE, *mem.* eight, 2830
HEGHTE, HEGHE, HIGIITE, *S.* height, 1146, 1157, 2294, 3626
HEKES, *s.pl.* horses of some kind, 2284
HKLDEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* bent down, 3308
HELE, *a.* welfare, good fortune, 2630, 3958
HELE, *V.* cover, conceal ; *pret.* 3 *s.* HILLID, 1120 ; *p.p.* HILLYD, HYLED, 3607, 184
HELME, *S.* helmet, 1832; *pl.* 380 ; HELLMES, 2551
HELMEDE, *adj.* having helmets, 3626
HELYCH, *adv.* loudly, 1286
HEMMES, HEMMYS, *S. pl.* edges, borders, 2825, 2219
HENDE, *adj.* skilful, courteous, **167,** 1283 ; *supcrl.* 3879
HENTE, *V.* seize, catch ; receive; suffer ; 3 *pl.* 3485 ; 3 *s.* 1132 ; *pret.* 3 5. 2973; *p.p.* 1842
HERBARIOURS, .s.p*l*. harbingers, company sent on in front of an army to prepare the way, 2448
HERBERDE, *p.p.* lodged ; quartered; stationed; 158, 166, 2650
HEREDE, *adj.* hairy, 1083
HERNE-PANE, *S.* skull, 2229
HERTE, *V.* take heart, 1181
HERTELYCHE, HERTLY, *adv.* heartily ; thoroughly ; 3642, 2991
IIESLYN, *adj.* of hazel, 2504
HETCHKS, *S. pl.* hatches, 3682
HETE, HETTE, *V. IS.* promise, 2127, 3396
HETHE, *S.* heath, 2660, 4176
HETIIELY, *adv.* scornfully, 268
HETHYNGE, *S.* contempt, scorn, 1843
IIEUANDE, *pple.* striving, 3704
HEUEDE, HEPE, *S.* head, chief; 262, 2445
HEUEDEDE, *p.p.* beheaded, 463
HEUEN, *v.* 1 *s.* aflict, agitate, 1937
HEWE, *S.* hue, colour, 207 ; *pl.* 4165
HEWYS, *V.* 3 *s.* lifts, raises, 4156 ; *p.p.* 4091
HEYGH E. *See* HEGHTE
HEYLY. ***Ser.*** HYELY
HEYNDLY, *adv.* graciously, 15
HEYNKE, HYEN, *adv.* hence, 2436, 2744
HEYNZOUS, *adj.* heinous, 268
HIGHTE, *p.p.* named, 2899
HILLID, HYLED. *See* HELE
HNJSTE, *s.* copse, 3369
HODLES, *adj.* bare-headed, 2308
HOLE, *adj.* hollow, 10-S3
HOLE, HOLLE, *adj.* *See* HALE
HOLTE, *s.* wood, copse, 1283 ; *pl.* 1259; HOLTTES, 3544
HOMAGERS, *S. pl.* those owing homage, 3147
HONDEM, *V.* 2 *pl.* keep in hand ? 3209
HOPE, r. 1 *s.* trow, 2209, 2885
HOPES, *S. pl.* mountain-glens, 2503

HORSEDE, HORSESEDE, HORSESYDE, *adj.* horsed, mounted, 1179, 2944, 1647
HOSTAYE, *V.* wage war, 555
HOTCHEN, *v.* 3 *pl* jog; toss, 3687
HOUE, HUFE, *v.* tarry, linger; 2 *s.* 1688; 3 *s.* 1283, 2010, 1260; 3 *pl.* 377, 2122; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3046; 3 *pl.* 3009; *pplc.* HOWANDE, 1648
HOUNDE, *s.* hand, 1807
HOTTRSCIIES, *v.* 3 *pl.* rattle, din, 2110
HOUSYNGE, *s.* habitation, dwellings, 1284, 2285
HOWGE, HUGGE, *adj.* huge, 2889
HOWNDRETIIE, *num.* hundred, 2108
HOWSELDE, *p.p.* BE HOWSELDE, communicate, receive the Sacrament, 4315
HUKE-NEBBYDE, *adj.* hook-nosed, 1082
HUKES, *8. pl.* probably mis-written for HEKES, 734
HUNDE-FISCH, *s.* dogfish or shark, 1084
HURPA.CE, *s.* fence, or barrier, 3626
HURDEZ, *v.* 3 *s.* herds, 1010
HURLES, *v. imperat.* 2 *s.* dash, 262
HURTEZ, *v.* 3 *s.* thrusts, 1772
HYDEDE, *adj.* having a hide or covering, 1001
HYE, *adj.* *Sec* HECHE
HYE, HY, HEY, *S.* haste (in phrase "on hye" sometimes without significance), 463, 2109, 166
HYELY, *adv.* proudly, 1058
HYMLANDE, *ppl* (?) 2503
HYNDIRE, *adj.* hindmost, 3626
HYNGE, *V.* hang; 3 *pl.* HYNNGES, 3473; *prcL* 3 *pl* 281; *ppl* 1083; *p.p.* 3590
HYNTER, *s.* rear, 3605
HYRDEZ, *S. pl* shepherds, 3245

ICHE, YCHE, *adj.* each. *Sec* ILKE
ICHE, *v. 3 pl* move, 1411
IDENE, 3061, probably miswritten. *See* Note
ILE, *S.* isle; *pl* ILLES, 2359
ILKANE, ILKONE, *pron.* each one, 279, 3691
ILKE, *adj.* same, 65, 1311
ILKE, YLKE, ICHE, YCHE, *adj.* each, 83, 194, 589, 3634
IMANGEZ, *prep,* amongst, 3169
INCOME, *9.* entrance, 2171
INEWE, INOWE, YNEWE, YNOWE, *adv.* enough, 3161, 3095, 1360, 1626
INGLISCE, *S.* English, 2529
INMETTE, *S.* entrails, 1122. *See* N. E. Diet. Inmeat
INNS, *S. pl* houses, 3041
INSETTE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl* overran, 2038
Irous, I ROWS, IRUS, *adj.* wrathful, angry, 1329, 1592, 1957
I ROUSLYE, *adv.* wrathfully, 2530
Iwis, IWYS, IWYSRE, *adv.* surely, of a truth, 3339, 2332, 546

JAGGEDE, *V.pret.* 3 *s.* cut, slashed, 1123, 2087; *p.p.* 2909, notched, 905
JAM BE, JAMBY, *adj.* well-legged, swift, 2894, 373
JAPEZ, *S. pl* wiles, 1398
JERODYN, *S.* "Some fabric" (Strat. Bradley), 905
JEUOWNDE, *adj.* (Her.) gyronny, divided into triangular parts of two colours or shades, 2891
JOLILY, JOLYLY, *adv.* gallantly, festively, 245, 373, 4109
JOLY, JOLLY, *adj.* valiant; well-conditioned, 3414; *comp.* 4110; *superI* 1658

JONEDE, *p.p.* joined. *See* JOYNEZ

JOPOWNE, JUPON, *s.* a thick tunic worn sometimes under, sometimes over, metal armour, 4238, 905

JORNE, JOURNAYE, JOURNEE, JFRNEE, S. a day's journey ; a day's work, 3411, 445, 2875, 1161, 2894

JOWELL, *s.* jewel, 862

JOYNENYGE, *s.* hostile encounter, 2133

JOYNEZ, *v. 3 pl* join battle with, 2112; p.*p.* JONEDE, 2890

JOYNTER, *S.* jointure in armour, 2893

JUSTER, 5. jouster, 3412

JUSTYFYE, *v.* execute justice upon, 663

JUSTYNGE, *s.* jousting, 2875

(Many K-words will be found under C)

KAMBE, *S.* comb, 3351

KAMPE, *S.* battle, 3670, 3701

KAREDE, *V. pret.* 2882. *See* CAIRE

KARFUKE, *S.* place where four roads meet, 2003

KAUNT, *adj.* courageous, 2195

KELE, *V.* cool, 1839 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 2712

KELLE, *S.* caul, :iet for the hair, 3258

KEMBEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* combed, 3351

KEMPES, *S. pl.* knights, warriors, 1003

KEMPE, *V.* contend, compete, 2683

KENE, *V.* tell, show, point out, 876, 3521 *iprct. 3 s.* 481 ; *3 pl* 1590

KENETEZ, 5. *pl* small dogs of some particular breed, 122

KEPE, 5. care, heed, 156, 3049

KEPE, KIPPE, *V.* keep, observe, watch;await; 1138,2003, 3484, 3522 ; *imperat. 2 pl.* 628 ; *pret. 3 pl.* 838, 919 ; *p.p.* 998, 2171

KEKFES, KEUUES, *V.* 3 *s.* cuts, 4231, 2567 ; *p.p.* CORUEN, 211

KETILL-HATTE, *S.* a kind of mediaeval helmet, 3516; *pl.* 2993

KIDD, KYDD, KYDE, *adj.* renowned, famous, 3673, 849, 626

KIRK, KYRKE, *S.* church, 4016, 1219

KITHE, KYTHE, *S.* country, home; nation; 3866, 1004, 142; KYHTE, 3996

KLOKES, *S. pl.* claws, 792

KNAFE, KKAFFE, KNAUE, *S.* servant, serving-man ; boy ; 2621, 2637, 850," 1025

KNYLLES, V. 3 *pl.* ring a bell, 2353

KONYNGE, S. wisdom, ability, 3883

KRISPANE, *adj.* crisplng ; KRISPANE KROKE, crisplng crook, 3352

K W N , *v.* 1 *s.* acknowledge, 1565

KYHTE. *Sec* KITHE

KYNDE, *s.* nature; natural descent ; mankind ; 125, 3049, 2385, 3956, 848 ; race, 3867

KYNDLY, *adj.* lit, suitable ; good; 3883, 4188

KYNDLY, KYNDLYCHE, KYNDELY, *adv.* suitably (as befitting), 2712, 3521 ; graciously (like a kiug), 714

KYNGHYKE, *s.* kingdom, realm, 24 ; *pl.* 649, 820

KYNKEDEN, *S.* kindred, 2604

KYRNELLES, *8. pl* battlements, 3046

KYSTLS, *s. pl* chests, 2302, 2355

KYTHE, *V.* show, manifest, 1652, 4193

LACCHEN, LACHEN, *V.* 3 *pl.* take, seize, catch ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* 1515 ; 3 *s.* and *pl.* LAGHTE, 2693, 2702; LAUGHTE, 2226, 2292; *p.p.* LAGHTE, LAUGHTE, 1817, 1902

LADE-STERNE, *S.* load-star, 751

LADILY, *adj.* befitting a lady, 3254

LAGGEN, *V.* 3 *pl.* beat down ? 2542

LAGHTE, LAUGHTE. *See* LAC CHEN

LAKE, *S.* lack, 163

LAKES, *S. pl.* pools, puddles, 960, 2149

LANGE, *adj.* and *adv.* long, 1103, 1200 ; ON LANGE, along, 1045; *adv.* comp. LENGERE, 736, 889

LANGE, *V.* belong, 3 *s.* 465 ; LENGEZ, 2082 ; 3 *pl.* 244,1244 ; LENGEZ, 1410; *pret.* 3p/. 1901; LENGEDE, 1624

LANGUESSANDE, *ppl.* languishing, drooping, 4338

LAPPE, *S.* covering, wrapper, 3286

LAPPEZ, *S. pi.* lappets or loose borders, 3254. Pearl, edit. Gollancz, XVII, 9, Lappez, translated *sleeves*

LAPPE, *V.* enfold, enclose, 3292 : *pi*et.* 3 *pi.* 2300

LARGE, *V.* at (my, his) LARGE, at large, freely, 349, 421 ; AT THE LARGE, broadly, 447

LARGE, *adv.* boldly, unrestrainedly, 143, 2533 ; away, 1040, 3309

LARGESCE, *S.* liberality, 163

LAT, LATE, LATT, *V.* let, 4001 ; *imperat.* 1 *pi,* 3639 ; 3 *s.* 420, 398 : LETE, *pret* 3 *s.* 3886 ; LATTES IN SONDRE, parts asunder, 1819

LATES, LOTES, *S. pi.* gestures ; behaviour; manners; 118,536, 2425, 1462

LATHE, S. reluctance, 458

LATHELIOHE, LAYTHELY, *adj.* loathly, repulsive, 3279, 4302

LATTEDE, *V. pret.* 1 *pi.* sought, 254

LAUNCHES, *V.* 3 s. leaps, 2560 ; hurls a spear, 3831; *pret.* 3 *s.* 194

LAUNDE, LAWN DE, *S.* open glade among woods; plain; 1517, 2084

LAUNDE, LOND, *S.* land ; *pi.* 878, 1691

LAUNDON, *S.* field ; the open; O LAUNDON, to the open, 1768

LAUNGES, *V.* 3 *s.* longs, 383

LA YE, 3721. *Sec* LEE

LAVE, *S.* faith, creed, 2593

LAYERE, *S.* resting-place, camp, 2293

LAYKE, *S.* game, 1599, 3386

LAYNE, *V.* conceal, 2398; *imperat.* 2 *s.* and *pi.* 419, 2593

LEBURDE, *S.* lee-board, 3624

LECHE, *S.* division or separate portion of dishes arranged in small ornamented turrets and pinnacles, 194. *See* LECHYDE

LECH EN, *v.* tend, doctor, 2388

LECHYDE, *p.p.* sliced or divided into parts, 188

LEDE, *S.* man ; nation ; 138, 473, 997 ; *pl.* 1902, 2801

LEDYNGE, *S.* predominance, leadership, 3536, 3880

LEE, LAYE, *S.* shelter, 1446, 3721

LEEFE, LEFE, LEUE, *adj.* and *adv.* dear, lief, 454, 1035, 350; *comp.* 872, 1344

LEEFE, LEFE, LEUE, *s.* leave, permission, 3432, 429, 2082

LEFE, *V.* leave, 1340 ; *p.p.* LEFEDE, LEUEDE, 1397, 848
LEFTJLL, *adj.* permissible, 130
LBLE, *adj.* leal, faithful, true, 14, 647, 1971
LELELY, LELLY, LELY, *adv.* faithfully, honestly, 672,1102, 3084
LEMAWDE, *adj.* gleaming, 2462
LEMETE, *p.p.* limited, 457
LENDE, *V.* abide, 1970
LENPEZ, 5. *pi.* loins, 1047
LENGE, V abide, linger, 72, 349 ; 3 *s.* 469 ; LENGGES, 476 ; *inf.* LENGEN,1588
LENGEDE, 1624. *See* LANGE, *V.*
LENGEKE, *adv.* *Sec* LANGE
LENGHE, *S.* longth, 1102
LENGHEN, *V.* lengthen, 2845
LEPPE, *V.* 3 *pi.* leap, 2081, LEPPYN, 3697, LEPYS, 3696 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3427 ; *ppl.* LEPPANDE, 1460
LEIIE, *v.* teach, 1035
LESKES, *S. pi.* loins, 1097, 3279
LESSE, *S.* leasing, lying, 139
LESYNGE, *S.* loss, 3079,' 3721
LETANDE, *ppl.* appearing, bearing oneself, 3831
LETE. *Sec* LAT
LETHERLY, *adv.* wickedly, 1268
LETT, LETTE, *V.* desist; hinder ; 2326, 473 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* LET, 3720
LETTE, *S.* hindrance, 92, 458
LETTYNG, S. prevention, 371
LEUE, *V. imperat.* 2 *pi.* believe, 702, 1097 ; *indie.* 3 *s.* LEUES, 2593
LEUENYNGE, *S.* lightning, 2463
LEUERE, *S.* retinue, company of men wearing their lord's colours or badges, 241, 3078
LEUEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* lives, 1731
LIFELICHE, *adj.* forceful, 3427
LIGGE, LYGGE, *V.* lie ; 2 *s.* LIGGES, 1060; 3 *s.* 805, LYS, 3938; *Zpl.* 459, 1773
LIGHAM, LYGHAM, *s.* body,3286 ; *pi.* 4269
LIKYNGE, LYKYNGE, *S.* pleasure, delight, 130, 701, 2673
LIRE *(lere), a.* face, 4272
LIRE, LYRE, *S.* fleshly parts; flesh ; 3281, 3954
LISTE, *S.* desire, 12
LISTE, *V. prct.* 3 *s.* desired, 4270
LOFTE, IN and ON LOFTE, APPON LOFTE, adverbial phrase, aloft, 942, 3623
LOGE, LUGGE, *V.* lodge, 421, 152 ; 3 *pi.* LUGEGEZ, 2280 ; *pret.* 3 *pi.* 486 ; *ppl.* LUGANDE, reposing, 1045
LOKERDE, *p.p.* matted, 779
LONGEZ, *v.* 3 *pi.* belong, 2828 ; *prct.* 3 *s.* 3080
Loos, LOOSSE, *S.* renown,' fame, 254, 474
LORAYN, *s.* richly-wrought trappings for a horse, 1460 ; *pi.* id. or thong-shaped streamers flying from the lance-heads, 2462
LORDOHEPPEZ, LORDCHIPEZ, LOKDECHIPPEZ, *s. pi.* territories, seignories, 1727, 253, 1970
LOSELS, *8. pi.* worthless fellows, 252
LOTHEN, LOTHYN, *adj.* hateful, disgusting, 778, 1097
LOUE, *v.* 1 *s.* praise, 369 ; *p.p.* 4305
LOUELY, LOUELYLY, *adv.* in a kindly, pleasant manner, 3478, 2292
LOUERDE, *s.* lord, 3918
LOWDE, ON LOWDE, *adv.* aloud, 1781, 2032
LOWE, *S.* flame, 194
LOWKKIDE, *p.pt.* closed, 3953

LOWRANDE, *ppl.* sullen, downcast, 1446, 4338
LOWTTES, *v.* 3 *pi.* bow ; bow down before ; 505 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* and *pl.* 3285, 3408
LOYOTOUR, *s.* "embroidery" (Perry), 3253
LUFE, *s.* helm ; beam; part of the bows ; 750, 744
LUFE, LUFFE, *S.* love, 705, 3381
LUFFE, *v.* love, 1597 ; 2 *pi.* 12 ; *p.p.* 2866
LUGANBE, LUGGE. *See* LOGE, *V.*
LUGHE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* laughed, 248
LUMPE, LUMITE, *s.* company; crowd ; 1819, 2230
LUSSCHE, *s.* stroke, 3848
LUTTERDE, *adj.* bowed, 779
LUYSCHEN, *v.* 3 *pi.* strike, 535 ; *prct.* 3 s. 2226
LYARDE, *adj.* gray, 2542, 3280
LYEFE, LYFFE, *S.* life, 2845, 1269 ; *pl.* 1217
LYFTE, *8.* sky, 4272
LYGIITE, *V.* light, alight, 1270 ; 3 *pi.* 933 ; *prct.* 3 s. 3594 ; *p.p.* 1782
LYGHTE, *V.* lighten, 2846 ; 3 *s.* 368; 3 pl. 251
LYGMAN, *S.* liegeman, 420 ; *p7.* 1518
LYKE, *v.* please, 195 ; *impcrs.* pleases, 302, 435 ; *prct.* 267 ; *p.p.* 3109
LYM, LYMME, *S.* limb, 459, 1046
LYMPE, *V.* befall; incur ; occasion ; 3 *s.* 1643; 3 *pi.* 3119; *prct,* 3 *s.* 3415 ; 1 *pi.* 292 ; *p.p.* 875
LYNB, *S.* tree, 454, 486
LYNKWHYTTEZ, *S. pi.* lintwhites, linnets, 2674
LYONEZ, *S. pi.* lions, 1818
LYTHE, *S.* probably miswritten for KYTHE, 1653
LYTHE, *adj.* tranquil, quiet, 1517, 1600
LYTHE, *V.* listen, 12 ; 3 *pi.* 1810
LYTHERLY, *adv.* wickedly, 1448
LYTHES, *s. pi.* people, 994
LYTHYRE, *adj.* bad, 23
LYTTE, *adj.* little (while), 550
LYWYNGE, *s.* living, 5

MA, MO, MOO, *adj.* more, 1829, 844, 856
MACHE, *S.* match, 4070
MACHEDE, *p.p.* matched, 1533, 2904
MACHES, *S. pi.* *See* MAKK
MADE, *adj.* mad, 4271
MAILIS, MAYLES, *S. Pl.* chain-armour, 2545, 904
MAKK, *S.* fellow, mate, 1166; *pi.* MACHES, 2950
MAKLESS, *adj.* matchless, peerless, 3875
MALLE, *V.* hammer, 4037; 3 *s.* 3841 ; *Zpl.* 3038
MA LUES YE, *S.* rich wine from Morea, 235
MANLY (MAYNLY), *adj.* with might, 2204
MANHEDE, *S.* manhood, 434, 4278
MANREPE, *s.* homage, service, 127
MANYKTN, *adj.* various, 3174
MAHCHE, *S.* border, frontier, 318, 1588 ; *pi.* 77, 603 ; MERKES, 461, 1147
MARCIIEZ-MEN, 5. *pi.* borderers, 1237
MASE, *V.* 3 *s.* makes, 960
MASONDEWES, *S. pi.* hospitals, asylums, 3038
MAUGERE, *S.* IN MAUGERE, in hostile keeping, 1588
MAUGREE, MAWGEEE, *prep,* in spite of, 1238, 426
MAUNDEMENT, *S.* order, commandment, 1587
MAWEN, *p.p.* mown, 2507

MAWNTELET, *S.* a short mantle, 3632
MAYNE, *S.* might, 4326
MAYNE, *adj.* mighty; vast; 427, 434
MAYNOYREDE, *p.p.* tilled, 2507
MEDILL-ERTIIE, *s.* middle-region between heaven and hell; earth, 2951
MEDILLWARDE, MEDYLWARBE, *s.* centre (of an army), 2904, 1988
MEKILL, *adj.* and *adv.* great; much, greatly, 1236, 711
ME LE, *v.* speak, talk, 990 ; 3 *s.* 679 ; 3 *'pi,* MELLYS, 3652
MELLE, *V.* join ; mix with ; join in combat with ; 938 ; 3 *s.* 2950 ; 3 *pi.* 2904
MELLYD, ADJ'. hammer-headed (?), beaten with a hammer (.'), 4210 ;
MENDYNANTEZ, .*s. 'pl.* beggars, 667
MENE, *V.* tell; question ; talk ; mean; make moan to ; 3556, 2869 ; 3 *9.* 3478, 3653 ; *pret.* 3 s. 891
MENGEN, V. 3 *pi.* mingle, 4173 ; *p.p.* 3632
MENSKE, *V.* honour, bestow; favour or grace, 1303, 2871; *p.p.* 4018
MENSKFULLY, *adv.* honourably, 631, 2322
MERESWYNE, *S. P*orpoise, 1091
MERKE, r. go, 351 ; 3 *s.* 2670 ; *pret.* 1 *s.* 3238
MERKE, V apportion, 1068; *p.p.* 1304
MERKES, 3 *s.* cuts, 2206 ; 3 *pl.* 4168 ; *p.p.* 952
MERKES, *S. pi. See* MARCHES
MERREDE, *p.p.* marred, 1238, 3555, 3322
METT, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* dreamt, 3223
METTE, *S.* meat; food; 2491 ; *pi.* 75, 1298
METTE, *p.p.* meted, 2343
METTE-WHILE, *S.* little while, 3903
MEVE, *V.* move, 2001
M ISDOO, *v. impcrat.* 2 *s.* ill-use 126
Mo, Moo. *See* M A
MOB LES, *s. pi.* property, goods, *666*
MOLDE, *s.* earth, 129, 975
MON, *r.* 1 *s.* must, 813 ; 1 *pi.* 1155
MONETHE, *s.* month, 318
MORE, *adj.* greater, 1018
MORNE-WJIILE, S'. morning-time, 2001, 3223
MORTHIKES, *V.* 2 *s.* murderest, 1315 ; MOURTIIERYS, 4259 ; *p.p.* 976
MoRWEN, *S.* morning, 3476
MOSTE, *adj.* greatest; prime ; 3322, 4221
MOT, MOTE, MOTT, MOTTE, *V.* 39. may, must, 346, 136, 227 ; 2 *pi.* 4104
MOWE, *v. subj.* 3 *9.* may, 3812
MOYLLEZ, *s. pi.* mules, 2287
MUSKADELL, *s.* a sweet wine made from muscat-grapes, 236
MYCHE, *adj.* and *adv.* much, great,greatly; 1166, 2033,1068
MYNDE, *9.* memory, 1221
MYNSTKHS, *S. PL.* monasteries, 3038
MYSOIIEFE, *s.* mischance, calamity, 667, 3137
MYSE-BIDE, *V.* offer injury, 3083. (More usually MISBEDE)
MYSESE, *adj.* unfortunate, *667*
MYSHAPPEN, *V.* 2 *s.* farest ill, 3454 ; *impers. pret.* 3767
MYSSE, *9.* harm, 1315, 3057
MYSTE, *adj.* misty, 2506
MYXEN, *S.* vile wretch, 989

NAKYN, NOKYN, NONKYNS, *adj.* of no kind, 2350, 430, 2363
NANE, *adj.* and *pron.* no ; none, 213, 565, 657
NAYE, *S.* (an aye), egg, 3283
NE, *adv.* not, 230, 1117 ; *conj.* nor, 10, 161
NEDES, *S. pl.* business, requirements, 522, 470, 1329
NEDEZ, *adv.* perforce, 451
NEGHE, *V.* draw nigh, 2433
NEGHE, *adv.* exactly, 2658
NESE, *S.* nose, 2248
NEUEWE, *S.* nephew, 689
NEYNESOM, *num.* nine others, 523
NOBLAY, *s.* grandeur, dignity, 76, 2435
NOKYN. *See* NAKYN
NOMBIRDE, NOWMERDE, *p.p.* numbered, 2887, 2658
NOMBYRE, NOWMER, *S.* number, 2281, 884 ; *pl.* NOMMERE, 591
NOMEN, NOMMEN, *p.p.* taken, 1437, 1905
NONE, *S.* hour at which a certain religious office was held, viz. the ninth hour after sunrise, about 3 P.M. ; later mid-day and dinner-hour, 78
NONIS, *adv.* nonce, 3297, 1927
NOT, *V.* 1 5. (ne wot), know not, 977
NOTEZ, *v.* 3 *pl.* use, 1815
NOTHER, NOTHYRE, NOWTHIRE, *conj.* neither, 2367, 10, 429
NOTTE, *S.* use, business, 1816 -
NOWEN, *adj.* own, THY NOWEN, thine own, 1806
NOYES, *V.* 3 *s.* annoys, grieves, 1816, 2248
NURREE, *s.* foster-child, 689
NYGHTGALE, *S.* nightingale, 929
NYGHTTES, *V.* 2 *s.* (thou) art overtaken by the night, 451
NYNNE, *num.* nine, 3439

O, Oo, *prep.* on, in, 656, 1217, 3736, 3906
OCHES, *V.* 3 *s.* hacks, breaks, 2565 ; 3 *pi.* 3675 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 4245
OF, *prep.* from, 2540
OFFYRE, *V.* partake of the Sacrament
OLAWE, *adv.* below, 1517
OLYFAUNTE, *S.* elephant, 2339 ; *pi.* 2288 ; ivory, 1286
OLYFE, *adv.* of life, from lyfe ; FELL or BRING OLYFE, kill, 802, 1139, 3906
ONE, *adv.* alone, only, 826, 2519; MYN ONE, by myself, 3230; THYN ONE, thyself, 466 ; BE PAM ONE, by themselves, 3195
ONE-SEEANDE, *pple.* looking on, 525
ONONE, *adv.* anon, soon, 571, 1231
OR, ORE, *conj.* and *prep.* ere, before, 374, 529, 1788
ORDANDE, *p.p.* ordained, 1621 ; *pret* 3 *s.* ORDAYNEDE, set in order, 1991
ORFRAEEZ, ORFRAYES, *s.* embroidered border; gold fringe, 902, 2142
OSAY, *S.* sweet straw-coloured wine from Aussay, Alsatia, 202
OSLANTE, *adv.* aslant, 2254, 3923
OSTAGE, *S.* hostages, 3187, 3208
OSTAYANDE, *ppl.* waging war, 3502
OUER-CHARGGEDE, *p.p.* OVerpowered, 1749
OTTER-FALLEN, *p.p.* fallen upon, 1154
OUERKESTE, *v. pret.* 3 *s.* overthrew, 3932
OUERLYNGE, *s.* over-lord, head, 289, 710, 2602

OTJER-RECHE, *V.* afford, pay over, 1508 ; 3 *pi.* reach across, 921
OUEKSETTE, *p.p.* overthrown, 111, 4136
OuEitWHELME, *v.* turn over, 3261
OUNDYDE, *adj.* wavy, curly, 765 ; OWNPE OF AZURE, in undulating lines of azure, 193
OWTE-ILES, OWTT-ILLES, *S. pi.* isles of the outer seas, 30, 2359
OWT-LANDES, OWT-LONDES, *S. pi.* far-away lands, 2607, 3697
OWT-MOWNTEN, *s. pl.* far-away mountains, 3909
OVTE OIJER, OWTT OUEKE, adv. outside, above, 903, 2339
OWTHER, *conj.* either, 110, 964
OWTTRAYE, V attack, assault, overcome, 642, 1328 ; 3 *a.* 1664 ; *p.p.* 1952, 2840

PACOKES, *S. pl.* peacocks, 182
PALES, PALESSE, S. palace, 503, 3913, 718 ; *pi.* FALAISEZ, 1287
PALLE, *S.* rich cloth used for hangings, often *in* gold, 1288, 2478, 3142
PALYDE, *p.p.* furnished with pall, 1287
PALYD, *adj.* (Her.) striped, 1375
PARE, *V.* hurt, impair, 4017
PARTY, *S.* part; country ; treaty; company of men for reconnoitring, etc. 212; *pl.* 2596, 1584, 1925
PAS, *S.* way, 3496
PASSANDE, *ppl.* passing, 2741 ; (Her.) passant, with the head looking straight forward, 4184
PASTORELLES, *S. pi.* shepherd-boys, 3120
PAUMES, *S. pi.* palms, 776
PATJNSON, *S.* annour-piece covering the paunch, 3458. *See* PAWNCE
PATTYS, *adj.* (?) usual meaning of the subst. is shield, 3460
PAUYSERS, 5. *pi.* bearers of the pa vis or large shield to cover archers, 2831, 3004
PAYELYOUXS, PAUYLLONS, *S. pi.* tents ; banners, 2478, 2624
PAWNCE, *S.* armour-piece covering the paunch, 2075
PAYE, *V.* satisfy, please, 4049 ; 3 *s.* 2646 ; *p.p.* 230
PAYNE, PEYNE, *S.* penalty, 2329, 1217; *pl.* 1546, 1632
PAYNYME, *S.* pagan, heathen, 1377 ; *pl.* 2835, 1544
PAYSES, *V.* 3 *pl.* weigh, load, 3037; *prct.* 3 *pl.* weighed down, 3042
PAYVESE, *S. pl.* large shields, usually to cover the archers, 3625
PECHELYXE, .V. diminutive of 'peche,' spot, stain, 1341
PEKILL, *S.* pickle, 1027
PELID (Pelt), *v.* 3 pl. beat, 3042
PELOUIW, PYLOURS, *S. pl.* (?) prob. throwers of darts, archers, 2831, 3004
PENDES, *V.* 3 *s.* belongs, 1612 ; *3 pl.* 2624
PEXSELL, S. little banner, streamer, 2411, 2076 ; *pi.* 2460, 1289
PERFOURNEDE, *p.p.* performed, 672
PERRIE, PERRYE, *S.* precious stones, 4184, 3461
PERTLY, *adv.* openly, 2917
PESANE, *S.* armour for the neck or breast, gorget, 3458
PIGHTE, *p.p.* pitched, placed; set (with stones), 1287, 1290, 212, 3354 ; decked, 3364
PlLLION-HATT, *S. B.* sort of Cap, 3460
PILOUUR, *s.* robber, 2533

PLASCHE, *8.* pool, 2798
PLATTES, *v*, 3 *pl.* prob. mis-written for PLANTES, 2478
PLENERLY, *adv.* fully, 2608, 3498
PLEYN, *V.* complayn, 1217
PLUMPE, *S.* rnêtee, fray, 2199
PLUNGEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* went under the water, 1522
PLYANDE, *adj.* flexible, curved, 777
PLYTTE, *S.* plight, 683
POMARIE, *s.* orchard, 3364
POME, *S.* ball of dominion, 3354
POMELL, *s.* ornamental knob or boss, 1289
PONTYFICALLES, *S. pl.* ecclesiastical dignitaries, 4335
PORKEDESPYNE, *S.* porcupine, 183
PORKES, *s, pl.* swine, 3121
PORTE, *S.* Porte, the Turkish Empire, 2609
PORTES, *S. pl.* gates, 503, 568 ; port-holes, 749 ; PORTE, 3625, (?) for PORTES, port-holes
POSTLKS, *s. pl.* apostles, 2413
POTESTATE, *s.* potentate, 2327
POUEUALL, *s.* poor folk, 3120
POUERE, *adj.* poor, 3540
POURPOUR. *See* PURPRE
POWERE, *s.* forces, 1635, 1925, 2155
POYNE, *V. 1 s.* sew, stitch, 2624
PRERES. *See* PRIKE
PRESE, *V.* entreat; bring influence to bear ; press, 1583 ; 3 *s.* 1374 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 2199
PRESSE, *S.* throng, tumult, 1477, 1522
PRICE, PRIS, PRYCE, PRYS, PRYSSE, *adj.* precious, good, noble, 94, 688, 1477, 718, 1545 ; IN PRIS, in costly clothes, 352
PRIKE, PREKE, V spur on rapidly, ride forward, 2844 ; 2 *$.* 2533; 3 *s.* 718 ; 3 *pl.* 503 ; *pple.* 2836 ; *p.p.* stitched, 3608
PRIKKERE, PREKER, *8.* rider, horseman, 2649, 1374 ; *pl.* 355, 2835
PRISTE, *adj.* ready; valiant, 1021, 4106
PRISTLY, *adv.* eagerly, 2762
PROFIRE, *v.* hold forth ; offer battle ; *impcrat.* 2 *s.* 2534 ; 2 *s.* 2533 ; 3 *s.* 1376
PROFIRE, PROFYRE, *S.* attempt, 2857 ; offer of battle, 1257
PROVESTE, *S.* provost, 1611,1889
PROWESCHE, *S.* game for valour, 1958
PRYCE, PRYS, *S.* prize ; esteem, 1924, 2751, 2649
PRYME, *s.* the first hour of the day, 95, 4105
PFRCHESE, *v.* gain, 3497
PURPRE, PURPUR, POURPOUR, *s.* purple, 4184, 1288, 1375
PURITAYEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* furnished, provided, 2832 ; *p.p.* supplied with provisions, 2477; made ready, equipped, 1925
PURVEATTNCE, *S.* ALL MY PURVEAtJNCE, all in my power to provide, 688
PYKE, *s.* staff, 3475 ; *pL* claws, 777
PYKES, *V.* snatch, steal, 1636; 2 *s.* 2534
PYLOTES, *S. pl.* pellets, missiles of stone, 3037
PYLOURS. *See* PELOURS
PYMENT, *S.* wine mixed with spice or honey, 1028
PYNE, S. suffering, 3043
PYNNE, *v.* confine, 4047

QUARTE, QUERTE, *S.* health ; safety, 552, 3810
QUOD, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* quoth, **140,** 1559

QUYTTE, V 1 *s.* requite, 1788
QWARELLES, *s. pl.* arrows or bolts with square heads, 2103
QWASTE, *p.p.* quashed, crushed, 3389
QWAT, QWATE, *pron.* what, 3868, 4008
QWAYNTLY, *adv.* artfully, ingenious^, 2103, 3261
QWEN, QWENNE, QWHEN, *adv.* when, 1222, 48, 736, 407
QWHILLES, QWHYLE, QWHYLIS, *adv.* whilst, while, 4160, 553, 3505
QWYKE, QWYKKE, *adj.* alive, 1736, 3810
QWYJC, *adv.* whence, 3503
QWYTHEN, *adv.* (0 4157

BAAS, *v.* snatch away, 362 ; *prct,* 3 *s.* RASEDE, 2984
RACCHES, *3. pi.* hounds, 3999
BADE, *S.* fear, 3896
BADE, *adj.* afraid, 1995, 28S1
BADE, P*ret.* of ' ryde '
BADLY, *adv.* quickly, suddenly, 1529, 3815
BADNESSE, *S.* fear, 120, 310
BAGHTE, *prct.* of ' reche '
BAIKE, *S.* course, road, 1525, 2985
BAIKE, *V.* 3 *pi* go, 2352 ; 3 *s.* 1762 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* 237 ; *ppl.* 3469
BANEZ, *S. pi.* thickets, 923
BANKE, BAITNKE, *adj.* rank, strong, brave, 2271, 2240
BAPLY, *adv.* swiftly, 1763
BAPPYD, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* smote, 785
BAREDE, *V. pret. 3 s.* roared, 784 1124
BASCHES, *V.* 3 *pl.* rush, 2107
BASKAILLE, *S.* rabble, 2881
BATHE, *adj.* swift, 2550
BATHE, BAYTHELY, *adv.* speedily, quickly, 237, 2880
BATTGHTE. *Sec* BECHE
BAUNSAKE, *V'.* search thoroughly, 4304 ; 3 *s.* 3939; 3 *pl.* 1884 ; *impcrat. 2 pl.* investigate, 3228
RAUNSONE, *S.* ransom, 1528
RAUNSON, *V.* ransom, exact payment from, 466, 1276, 3275 ; *prct.* 3 *s.* 329; 3 *pl.* 293 ; *p.p.* 100, 2667
RAWR, *S.* rowe ; ON HAWE, one after the other, in order, 238, 2179
RAWMPYDE, *V. pret. 3 s.* ramped, 794
RAWNDOFNE, *s.* force, vehemence ; A BAWNDOUXE, *adv.* vehemently, 2985
RAYLIDE, *p.p.* covered, 3263
RAVMEDE, *p.p.* taken the rule, 100
REALE, RE ALL, BIALL, RYEALL, *adj.* royal, kingly, noble, 524, 179, 1993, 2138, 17 ; *vupcrl.* 175
REALTEE, RYALLTE, *8.* royalty, 228, 512 ; *pl.* 1605
REBAWDE, *S.* ribald, rascal, 1333; *pl.* 1416
REBAWDOUS, *adj.* ribald, 456
BECHE, *v.* reach, take ; draw ; 3 *s.* I l l , 792 ; *prct.* 3 *8.* BAGHTE, RAUGHTE, 2766, 3352, 3546 ; RECHEDE, 3350 ; *p.p.* BAGHTE, RECHIDE, 2666, 1043
BECHED, *s.* (?) richness, poss. miswritten for 'reches,' costly things, 3263
BECHES, S. riches, 2667, 3571
BEDDOUR, *S.* strictness, 1456
BEDDOUR, *8.* fear, 109, 485, 1418
REDE, RED, *V.* advise ; discern ; interpret, 1 *s.* 550 ; 2 *pl.* 2369 ; *imperat.* 2 *pl.* 3228 ; *p.p.* 2921
REDEN. *See* RYDE

REFE, *V.* take away, plunder, bereave *pret.* 3 *s.* 959 ; REFTE, 1575; 3 *pl.* 295 ; *p.p.* REFEDE, REFT, REWEDE, 1820, 1206, 3315

REGALE, *S.* regalia, 4207

REGHTTES, *V.* 3 *s.* rights, put to rights, 3815 ; *3 pl.* 1454, RYGHTTEN, 3618

REHERSEN, *V.* relate, tell, 3229, 3452 ; 3 s. 3206 ; *p.p.* 1666

REHETES, *V.* 3 *s.* encourages, cheers, 411, 3198 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 221

REKE, *S.* smoke, 1041

REKENESTE, *adj.* quickest, readiest, 4081

REKKE, *V.* reck, care, 1 *s.* 378 ; 1 *pl.* 2040 ; 3 *s.* 995 ; *prct.* ROUGHTE, 3274

RELAYES, *V.* 3 *pl.* pause, 1529

RELEUIS, *V.* 3 *pl.* reassemble, collect, 2278 ; *pret. 3 pl.* 2234 ; *p.p.* rallied, 1207

RELIGEOUS, *adj.* used substantively, members of religious orders, 3539, 4334

RELYES, *V.* 3 *pl.* rally, assemble, 1882, 429 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* rejoined, 1391

RELYS, *V.* 3 *s.* reels, 2794

REMMES, *S. pl. Sec* REWME

REMMES, REMYS, *V.* 3 *s.* cries aloud, 2197, 4155; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3894

RENAYEDE, *adj.* renegade, 2913, 3892

RENGNEDE, *V. prct.* 3 *s.* reigned, 3272

RENKE, RENKKE, RENNKKE, *S.* man, 1057 ; *pl.* 1206, 1882, 1994, 2135

RENKKES, *S. pl.* rows, alleys, 391

RENNEN, *V.* 3 *pl.* run, 200

REPENDEZ, *V.* 3 *pl.* (?) rear (?) 2107

REQUIT, p.p made good, 1680

RERE, *V.* 3 *pl.* move, 2810

REREAGE, *S.* arrears, 1680

REREBRACE, *S.* armour covering the arm from the shoulder to the elbow, 2566

RERERYS, *V. S.* raises, 4249 ; *p.p.* 4280

REREWARDE, *S.* rearguard, 1430, 1762

RESAYWE, *V.* receive, 3587

RESON, *S.* motto, 2921

RETENEWYS, RETENUZ, *8. pl.* retainers, suite, 1334, 3572

RETOURNES, *V.* 3 *pl.* turn back, 1395

REUAYE, RYVAYE, *V.* hunt or hawk by a river-bank, 3275, 3999

REUERSSEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* turned down, 2070 ; *p.p.* bound, bordered, 3255

REUERTEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* changed the direction of, 2918

REUESTE, *p.p.* robed, 4334

REWDLY. *See* RUYDLY

REWE, *V.* cause regret; have pity, 1678 ; *impcrat.* 2 *s.* 866 ; 3 *s.* repents, 3272

REWEDE. *See* REFE

REWGIIE, *S.* sorrow, 3859

REWME, *S.* realm, 509, 637 ; *pl.* 52, 837 ; REMMES, 49

REWTIIE, *S.* pity, sorrow, compassion, 888, 2241

REWTIIE, *adj.* cruel, causing ruth, 3453, 3560

RIATOURS, *s. pl.* ravagers, 2034

RICHE, RECHE, *adj.* mighty, ruling, noble, 238, 361, 1732, 3989 ; *superl.* 147, 865

RICHELY, *adv.* sumptuously, 173

RIGGE, *S.* back, 800

RIOT, RYOTT, *V.* ravage, riot, 456, 341, 923; (with the reflexive pron.) revel, indulge in feasting, 3 *s.* 619, 3172

RIOTE, RYOTTE, *S.* riot, license, 294, *412; pl.* 388, 3893
RISTE, RYSTE, *adj.* covered with trapppings ; ready, 1428, 2235
RITTEZ, *V.* 3 5. and *pl.* tear, rend, 2138, 3753, 3824
ROCHELL, *S.* a kind of wine, 203
Roo, *s.* rocking wheel, 3272
ROGGEDE, *V. Pret.* 3 *s.* shook, 784
ROLLEDE, *p.p.* enrolled, 2641
ROMEDE, ROMYEDE, *V. prct.* 3 *s.* roared, 784, 1124 ; ROMYEZ, *indie.* 3 *s.* 888
RONNEN. *See* RYNE
Roo, *s.* wheel, 3362, 3374
Roo, *s.* quiet, rest, 1751, 3272
Roo, *s.* roe, 922, 4000
ROSELDE, ROSSELDE, *adj.* (?) "brandished, shaken; *cf.* Sw. rusk Ia; E. rustle" (Brock), 2880, 2793
ROSERS, *s. pl.* rose-gardens, 923
ROSSE, *s.* rose, 3457
ROSSETE, *adj.* russet, any tone between reddish-brown and gray, 237
ROWELL, *s.* wheel, 3262
ROWM, ROWME, ROWMME, *adj.* roomy, wide, spacious, 1454, 391, 3470
ROWTE, *v.* snore, sleep, 108
ROWTE, ROWTTE, *s.* troop, band, company, 3274, 1704, 719
ROWTTE, *8.* route, way, 379
ROY, ROYE, *S.* king, 411, 3173, 3200
RUSCHE, *v.* rush ; fall violently; throw down violently, 1339, 2880 ; 3 *s.* 2241, 392, RTJYSCHES, 2983 ; *Spl.* 2550, RUYSSCHES, 2913 ; *prct.* 3 *s.* 2792; *Spl.* 120
RUSCLEDE, *adj.* (?), 1096. *Cf.* "Wars of Alexander," ed. Skeat, I. 4126, resild
RUYD, *adj.* rude, 1096, 1057
RUYDLY, RtTYDLYCHE, REWDLY, *adj.* rudely, 794, 1877, 2810
RYALL. *See* REALE
RYDDE, *adj.* fierce, rough, 4117. See Jamieson, Rid
RYDE, *V.* ride, 1876 ;'3*s.* RYDDIS, 3540; 3 pl. RYDEN, 2809 ; *pret.* RAPE, RODE, ROODE, 2849, 1953 ; *pret. Spl.* REDEN, 488; *p.p.* 52, 100
RYFE, RYWE, *V.* split, cleave asunder, 362, 2439 ; 3 s. 1474, 3821· ; *Spl.* RYFFEZ, 2913
RYGHTE, *V. imper.* 2 *s.* decide, 458
RYNDES, *S. pl.* trees, 921, 3363
RYNE, *V.* run, 109 ; 3 *s.* 31, 540 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* KANE, 1526, RYNNYDE, 920 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* RONNEN, 922 ; *ppl.* 392
RYXSEDE, *p.p.* rinsed, 3375
RYPE (up), *v.* tear asunder ; search for, 1867 ; 3 *s.* 3940
RYSSES, *V.* 3 *s.* rises, 3660
RYUES, *S. pl.* (?) probably some kind of weapon, 1761
KYUE, *V.* arrive, land, 3896

SA, *adv.* so, 3796
SADDE, *adj.* sated, 847
SADLYE, SADDLYE, *adv.* seriously, earnestly, 331, 4089
SAGGE, *adv.* sage, 814
SAGIIETYLL, *V.* become reconciled, 330
SAKLES, SAKELES, *adj.* guiltless, 3986, 3399
SALE, *S.* hall, 91, 1296
SALL, *V.* shall, 1, 2, 3, *s.* 16, 105, 111, 300
SALUE, *V.* salute, *Ss.* SALUZ, 87, *prct.* 3 *s.* SALLIED, 82
SALUE, *V.* salve, deal, 932 ; *p.p.* 2907
SALUEZ, *S. pl.* salves, 2691

SANDES, *S.* messenger, 513
SANDES-MANE, *S.* messenger, 1419 ; *pl.* 266
SARE, *adv.* sore, sorely, 134, 2248
SATILLS, *V.* 3 *pl.* settle themselves, 2465
SATJGHTE, *S.* peace, reconcilement, 1007, 3052
SATJNKE, *8.* blood, 179
SAWGHTE, *adj.* at peace, reconciled, 3194, 4042
SAWLE, SAULE, SATJLL, *S.* soul, 1169, 666, 2192
SAWTERE, SAWTIRE, *S.* psalter, 3316, 3421
SAWTUROUHE, *S.* (Her.) saltier, ordinarily in the form of a St. Andrew's Cross, 4182
SAYNE, *V.* to cross oneself, 969 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 1042, SAYNNED, 966
SCATIIYL, SKATHELL, *adj.* hurtful, 32, 1642
SCHADAN DE, *p.pl.* flowing, 3845
SCHAFT-MONDE, *s.* a measure of about six inches, a span, 2546, 4232
SCHAKE, *V.* go forward, hasten, 1213, 1992
SCHAKKE, *S.* charge, 1759
SCHALKE. *S.* chalk, 1226, 1363
SCHALKE, *S.* man, fellow, 1098, 2170 ; *pl.* 1857
SCHALYDE, *p.p.* covered with scales, 766
SCHAPE, *V.* shape, arrange ; assign, 342, 2588 ; 3 *s.* 342, 2588,1716 ; *prct.* 3 *s.* SCHOUPE, 3599
SCHAPPELY, *adv.* fitly, 2333
SCHAWE, *S.* thicket, grove, 1765; *pl.* 1723, 1760
SCHAYLANDE. *adj.* walking askew, straddling wide, 1098
SOHEEN, SCHENE, SCHENNE, *adj.* fair, bright, lovely, 1760, 2429, 2676
SCHEFTEN. *See* SKYFTE
SCHELDYDE, *adj.* furnished with shields, 1856
SCHELTRON, SCHILTRON, *8.* troop, company, 2106, 1856, 1992 ; *pl.* 1765, 2210
SCHENCHIFE, *S.* (SCHEND-CHIP), ignominy, 4299
SCHENDE, *v.* disgrace, 2435
SCHEUE, *v.* shear, cut, 3 *s.* 3600 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* Sen ARE, SCHREDE, 3843, 2211 ; 3 *pl.* SCHERDE, 1856 ; *p.p.* 2688
SCHETHEDE, *p.p.* sheathed, 3852
SCHEWE, SCHAWE, *V.* show, be seen, appear, 191, 2588; *1 pl.* 1717, SHEWEX, 2457
SCHEWYNGE, *S.* vision, 3401
SCHIPPEMEN, *S. Pl.* sailors, 1212
SCHIRE, *adj.* bright, 1760, 1213
SCHIRREWES, *s. pl.* sheriffs, 725
SCHO, *pron.* she, 853, 860
SCHODEREDE, SCHODYRDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* shuddered, shook, 3844, 2106, 2169
SCHOKKE, *v.* shake, jog, thrust with a jerk ; 3 *s.* 3816 ; *dpl.* 1759, 4114
SCHONE, SCHOUNE, *v.* evade, shun, keep away, 1719, 314 ; 1 *pl. 1717'*, 3 s. SCHOWNNES,3559
SCHONE, *S. pl.* shoes, 3471
SCHORTE, AT PE SCHORTE, *adv.* promptly, 1325
SCHOTEN, r. 3 *pl.* shut, 749
SCHOTTE-MEN, *S. pl.* shootei'S, 2467
SCHOUET.L-FOTEDE, *adj.* shovel-footed, 1098
SCHOUEN, SCHO;TE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* shaved, 2333, 2335
SCHOUNTES, SCHUNTES, *V.* 3 *S.* shrinks back ; turns away ; avoids, 3816, 3715, 1055 ; 3 *pl.* 1759 ; *prct.* 3 *s.* 2106 ; *imperat.* 2 *s.* 1324

SCHOWANDE, *p.pl.* shuffling, 1099
SCHRAGGES, *s. pl.* jagged ends, 3473
SCHREDE, SCIIREEDE, *p.p.* clothed, enveloped, 3991, 767
SCHRENKYS, V 3 *s.* shrinks, 4234; 3 *pl.* SCHERENKEN, 2105; *pple.* 1857, SCHRINKANDE, 767 ; *p.p.* SCHRENKIDE, 2211, miswritten for ' schrenkande ' (?), cf. 1. 1857
SCHREWE, *S.* malignant being, 2779
SCHRIFTE, *s.* confession, 2588
SOHROWPE, *S.* dress, 3628
SCHIIYFE, *v. inipcrat.* 2 *s.* confess, 3400
SCHRYMPE, *s.* shrimp (dragon so called), 767
SCHWEDE, *pret.* 3 s. showed, appeared, 4233
SCHINBAWDE, *s.* armour-plate for the shin, 3846, prob. miswritten for ' schynbande.' *Sec* Stratmann, ed. Bradley
SEE, *S.* seat, 3291, 3350
SEEGE, SEGGE, *S.* camp, encampment, 2478, 355
SEGGE, SEEGGE, *S.* man, 134, 1574 ; *pl.* 1420
SEGGEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* besieged, 3011
SEGNOURRY, *S.* lordship, 528
SEKADRISSES, S. *pl (?)* 2283
SEKE, *adj.* sick, 1574
SEKE, SECHE, *V.* seek, resort, go, 105, 3233 ; 2 s. 3507 ; *prct.* 3 *S.* SOGHTE, SOUGHTE, 1041, 2170; *p.p.* SOGHTE, 1171
SEKERE, SEKIRE, *adj.* sure, certain, trusty, 1173, 551; com p. 3289 ; *superl.* 1492
SEKERLY, SEKYRLY, *adv.* surely, safely, 969, 3499, 1420
SEKIRE, *V.* 1 *s.* plight, 2585, 3804
SEKTOUR, *S.* executor, 665
SELCOUTHE, SELKOUTHE, *adj.* strange, rare, 75, 3531, 1948
SELDEN, *adv.* seldom, 1163
SELFEN, SELUEN, SELUYN, *adj.* self, 331, 8, 34
SELKOUTHELY, *adv.* wonderfully, 3252
SELKYLDE(?), 3356. " Perhaps miswritten for SERKYLDE, encircled " (Rrock)
SEMBLANT, *s.* show ; splendour (?) 75, 410
SEMBLE, *V.* assemble, meet, encounter, 63, 967 ; 3 *pl.* 606, 3748 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* 409, 1547 ; *p.p.* 70
SEN, SENE, *adv.* since, 127, 1695
SENDELL, *S.* a rich material, usually of silk, 2299
SENEGLY, SENGILLY, SENGLY, *ade* , singly, alone, 2434, 2592, 3729
SENT, *S.* assent, 1268, 2615
SENT, *S.* scent, 1040
SEPULTURE, *S.* burial, 4340
SERE, *adj.* various, sundry, 192, 141
SERFEDE. *See* SERUES
SERGEAUNT, *S.* armed attendant, servant, 1173 ; *pl.* 632
SERTE, *S.* feudal service ; obligation, right, 2936 ; *pl.* 513
SERUES, *V.* 3 *pl.* deserve, 1315 ; *p.p.* SERUEDE, SERFEDE, 2590, 1068
SESIDE, *V. prct.* 3 *s.* put in possession, 3065 ; *p.p.* SESSEDE, 2608
SETE, SETTE, *S.* throne; appointed place, 3315, 1305
SETILL, S. seat, 3270
SEUENYGHTE, *S.* week, 153, 380
SEWES, *S. pl.* delicacies ; savoury meats, 192

SEWE, *V.* follow, 3734; 1 *pi* 2927 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3288 ; *ppl.* 81
SEX, *adj.* six, 967 ; SEX SUM, six others, 471. *See* Note.
SEYNE, *adv.* afterwards, 188,192
SIBB, *adj.* akin, related, 3984, 681
SINGULERE, *adj.* single, 826
SITTANDE, *adj.* becoming, 953 1501
SITTANDLY, *adv.* becomingly, 159
SKALOPIS, *s. pl.* scallops, a pilgrim's shell-badges, 3474
SKAPE, *V.* escape, 1562
SKATHE, SCHATHE, *S.* harm, injury, 1643, 1841
SKATHLYE, *adj.* harmful, 1562
SKAYRES, *V. 3 pl.* scare, 2468
SKEWE, *V.* escape, 1562
SKOMFITE, *S.* discomfiture, 2325
SKOMFITE, *p.p.* discomfited, 1644
SKOMFITOURE, *S.* one who discomfits, 1644
SKOMFYTURE, *S.* discomfiture, 1561
SKOTIFERIS, SKOTTEFERS, *S. pl.* shield-bearers, 3034, 2468
SKOUEROURS, *S. pl.* scouts, 3118
SKOULKERY, *S.* lurking in ambush, 1644
SKOWTTE-WACHES, *S. pl.* sentinels, 2468
SKROGGES, *S. pl.* brushwood, 1641
SKYFTE, SCHIFTE, *V.* dispose, arrange; move, 1325, 1643 ; 3 *s.* 1561, 32 ; 3 *pl.* 3117, 3627 ; *imperat. 2 s.* 1717
SKYLL, *S.* discernment; skill, 32
SKYRMYS, *V.* 3 *pl.* skirmish, 2467
SLADE, *S.* glade, dell, 2978
SLAKES, *V.* 3 *s.* slackens, 3220
SLAKKES, *S. pl.* pools ; marshy ground, 3719
SLALE, *adj.* (?) for slely, slily, 3117. The alliteration requires 'skale'
SLAUGHTE, *S.* sleight, arts (of the birds), 2675
SLAWE, *p.p.* extinguished, outworn, 4044
SLAWYN, *S.* pilgrim's cloak, 3474
SLEGHE, *adj.* crafty, skilful, 2978
SLEGHTE, SLEYGIITE, *S.* skill, craft, 3220, 4045
SLEGHTE, *p.p.* slipped, glided, 2675
SLELY, SLEYGHLY, *adv.* slily, skilfully, craftily, 3855 2975, 4321
SLEWTHE, *S.* sloth, 3221
SLODE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* slid, 3854
SLOMOWKE, *S.* slumber, 4044
SLONGEN. *Sec* SLYNGES
SLOPE, *S.* gap between the hills, 2977
SLOPPES, *S. pl.* pools, 3923
SLOTE, SLOTTE, *S.* hollow above the breastbone ; pit of the stomach,, 2254, 2975
SLOTTEDE, *p.p.* slit, cloven asunder, 3853
SLOUGHE, SLEWE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* slew, 4015, 3418 ; 3 *pl.* 23
SLOWDE, *S.* sludge, slush, 3719
SLYKE. *See* SWYLKE
SLYNGES, *V.* 3 *s.* slings, hurls, 3220, 3855 ; *p.p.* 2978, 4321
SLYTTES, *V.* 3 *s.* slits, 2254, 2975; *p.p.* SLOTTEDE. *See* above
SNELL, *adj.* nimble, 57
SOLEMPLY, SOLEMPNELY, SOLEMNLY, *adv.* with ceremony ; festively, 3196, 1948, 525, 3805
SOLEMPNITEE, *s.* ceremony, 514
SOMERCASTELL, *s.* small wooden tower for baggage carried on an elephant's back, 3033
SONDE, *S.* messenger, 2511
SONDE, *S.* sand, 3728, 3745
SONDIRE, SONDRE, *adv.* IN SONDIRE, asunder, 2182, 1123, 362

SONDIRWISE, *adv.* separately, 3529
SOPE, *S.* morsel ; sup, 1890
SOPPE, *s.* troop, company, 1493, 3729
SORE, *adv.* sorely, 1173 ; *comp.* 1163
SOJITE, *s.* company, 63, 410 ; *pl.* 606
SOTHE, *s.* truth, 2591, 3229
SOTHE, *adv.* truly, 1686
SOTHELY, *adv.* truly, 172, 239
SOWDANE, *s.* sultan, 607, 1304 ; *pl.* 593
SOWDEOURS, *s. pl.* mercenaries, 551, 593
SOWE, *s.* an engine used in warfare, explained by some as a shed to shelter miners approaching the walls of a besieged town, 3033
SOWMES, *s. pl.* sums, 1627
SOWHE, *s.* (?) mis-written for SOTJTIIE (?), *see* 1. 1039 ; "read SOWRS, source " (Brock)
SOWTE, SOYTE, *S.* suite, company, 81, 3931
SPAKELY, *adv.* speedily, 2063
SPALDDYD, *p.p.* split, 3699
SPAYKE, S. (?) waist, 2060
SPEKES, *S. pl.* spokes, 3264, 3311
SPEKYKNGS, *.s. pl.* talk, 3163
SPELTIS, *S. pl.* splinters, 3264
SPENCIS, *S. pl.* spendings, 3163
SPENDYDE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* dispensed, 235
SPERE-LENGHE, *adj.* of the length of a spear, 3311
SPILLE, *V.* perish ; destroy, 2415 ; *3 pl.* 3159
SPLENT, *S.* small plate of armour, 2061
SPLENTIDE, *p.p.* covered with small plates, 3264
SPRADDEK, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* spread, 3310
SPRENTE, SPRENTYDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* and *pl.* leapt, sprang, 2062, 3310
SPROTJLEZ, *V.* 3 *8.* sprawls, 2063
STADE, *p.p.* set, placed, 1926
STAKE, *V.* erect on a stake, 1178
STALE, *S.* a division of an army, 377, 1355, 3873 ; *pl.* 1980
STAM, 5. prow, 3664
STAMYN, *S.* stem of a ship, 3658
STATTE, *S.* rank, 157
STEDDE, *p.p.* bestead, beset, 2824, 4132
STEDE, *S.* place, 1748, 2824
STEKES, *V.* 3 *pl.* stick, pierce, 3126 ; 3 *s.* 3822 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* 1488
STERAPE, STEREPE, *S.* stirrup, 2692, 916 ; *pl.* 3823
STERE-UOURDE, STERE-BURDE, *S.* starboard, 745, 3665
STERENEFULL, STERYNFULL, *adj.* stem, fierce, 3822, 2692
STERYN, *adj.* stern, fierce, 157, 755 ; *superl.* 3872
STEUEN, *S.* voice, 2531, 4269
STEWEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* stowed, made resistance, 1489
STIRE, *V.* set in motion ; stir ; move, 2823 ; 1 *s.* 4038 ; 3 *s.* STERYS, 917; 3 *pl.* STEMS, 2923, 3658; *pret.* 3 *s.* 1793 ; *impend. 2 pl.* 1748
STIRTTELYS, *V.* 3 *pl.* "STIZTTELYS, arrange" (Brock), 3622
STODE. *See* STONDEZ
STOKES, *S. pl.* thrusts, 1486
STOKES, *V. 3 pl.* thrust, 2554
STOKKES, *s. pl.* wooden stakes, 3665
STONAYS, *V.* 3 *pl.* stun, strike senseless, 2118; *p.p.* 1983, 3873
STONDEZ, *V.* 3 *pl.* stand, 2090, 3623 ; *pret.* 3 *8.* and *pl.* STODE, 1489, 2923; STODDE, 4133

STOTAIS, *V.* 3 *s.* is upset, disconcerted, 1435, 4271; becomes troubled in spirit, 3467
STOUR, STOWRE, *S.* conflict, tumult, 377, 1747, 2086
STOWNDE, *S.* hour; *pl.* 3888
STOWNTYNGE', S. delay, 491
STRANDEZ, STRONDES, *S. pl.* shore, margin of the water, stream, 598, 947, 1337 ; *pl.* 3627, 4067
STREKE, *adv.* straight, 1792, 3101
STREKENT, *pret.* 3 *pl.* struck (struck oars or sails), 755, 3659
STREKEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* stretches, stretches forward, 1229, 2085 ; 3pl. 3101
STRENGHE, STRENGHTE, *S.* strength ; strongly fortified place, 258, 796, ' 1435 ; *pl.* 1475, 2242
STUENGHELY, *adv.* strongly, 4096
STRETTE, *s.* road, way, 3467; *pl.* STRETIS, streets, 3127
STREYNEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* stretches, 917
STROYE, STRUYE, *V.* destroy, 1927, 561 ; 3 *pl.* 3127 ; *p.p.* 1933, 1205
STRYKE, *V.* strike, smite ; 3 *s.* 1124 ; STRYKKES, 1480 ; 3 *pl.* 1411 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* STRAKE, 2080, 2129
STUDYANDE, *ppl.* musing, 3467
STUFFE, *V.* furnish ; garrison with soldiers, 1932 ; 3 *pl.* 2369; *pret* 3 *s.* 3616 ; *p.p.* 4096
STYE, *s.* pathway, 3466
STYFFE, *adj.* stout, 3040 ; STYFFLYE, *adv.* stoutly, 376
STYGHTYLL, *V.* dispose, 157
STYKTE, *v. 3 pl.* desist, 3127
SUGETT, S. and *adj.* subject, 87, 3138 ; *pl.* SUBGETTEZ, 2314
SULAYNE, *adj.* solitary, 2592
SULDE, *v. subj. pret.* 3 *s.* should, 72, 213
SUPPOWELL, *v.* support, 2818
SUREPEL, *s.* surplice, 3317
SURRAWNS, .v. assurance, security, 3181
SURS, *s.* rising, 1978, 3468
SUTELEST, *adj.* subtlest, 808
SUYCHE. *See* SWYLKE
SUYTE, SUYTTE, *s.* suit, 179,528, 3139
SWAFRES, *V.* 3 *s.* staggers, 3970
SWALTERS, *v.* 3 5. (?) dashes, (?) 3924
SWANGE, *s.* loins, 1129
SWANGEN, *p.p.* beaten, 2146
SWANKE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* laboured, 2961 ; 2 *s.* 3361
SWAPE, S. blow, stroke, 314
SWAPPES, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, 1126, 4244 ; 3 *pl.* 1464 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 1795
SWARTHE, *s.* sward, 1126, 2145
SWEFEN, *S.* dream, 812; SWEFENNYS, *pl.* 3228
SWEFNYNGE, *S.* dreaming, 795
SWELTE, *V.* die, faint, 716, 813 ; 3 *s.* 2961, 3969 ; 3 *pl.* 1466 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 2982; *ppl.* 1465, 2146
SWEPERLY, *adv.* nimbly, 1128, 1465
SWEPPEN, *p.p.* struck, cut, 2508
SWETE, SWETTE, *S.* life-blood, 3703, 2145, 3360
SWEYS, *v.* 3 *s.* moves, bends, 57, 4272; 3 *pl.* fall, 1467 ; make to bend, 3676
SWOGIIE, SWOUGHE, *s.* faintness, swoon; murmur, 1127, 1467, 759
SWOWYNGE, S. murmuring, 931
SWYEII, *s.* squire, 2959, 3703
SWYKEDE, SWYKKEDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* deceived, betrayed, 1795, 3361

SWYLKE, SWICHE, SUYCHE, SLYKE, SICHE, *adj.* such, 403, 3000, 529, 3719, 967, 72
SWYM, *s.* faintness, 4246
SWYNGE, *s.* blow, stroke, 3360, 4223
SWYRE-BANE, *8.* neck-bone, 2959
SWYTHE, *adv.* swiftly, 185, 715; very, 1949 ; As SWYTHE, at once, 813
SYBREDYN, *S.* kinship ; kindred, 691, 4145
SYDLYNGS, *adv.* sidelong, sideways, 1039, 1043
SYLAND, *ppl.* gliding, falling, 1297, 3794, 4340
SYLURE, *S.* canopy, 3194
SYMPLE, *adj.* weak, inefficient, 967
SYNE. *See* SYTHEN
SYNGES, signs, 3154
SYNGLERE, *S.* boar, 3123
SYNGNE, *S.* sign, 3075
SYTE, SYTTE, *S.* trouble, 1060, 1305
SYTHEN, SETHEN, SYNE, SYEN, SYNNE, *adv.* afterwards, 184, 159, 169, 1977, 85, 3435, 4083
SYTHIS, *S. pl.* times, 2216
SYTTYN, *p.p.* sat, 511

TACHEMENTEZ, *S. pl.* appurtenances, 1568
TACHESESEDE, *p.p.* (?) spotted, (?) 821
TAGHTE, TAWGHTE, *adj.* expert, skilful, 478, 3202
TAK, *V.* take, 144 ; 3 *s.* TARE, 1890 ; 3 *pl.* TAS, 3203 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* TUKE, 328 ; 3 *pl.* 1359 ; *p.p.* 72
TAKE, *V.* pursue, 307
TALE, *S.* number, reckoning, 317, 2938, 4094
TALMES, *V.* 3 5. falters, 2581
TARGE, 5. charter, 89 ; *pl.* bucklers, round shields, 732
TARSSE, *S.* silk from the East, 3189
TAS. *See* TAK
TEMEZ, *C.* 3 *s.* makes empty, 1801
TENDE, *num.* tenth, 73
TENE, 9. grief, affliction, 1396, 1956
TENEFULL, *adj.* troublous, 4280
TENEFULLY, *adv.* grievously, 272, 2345
TENES, *V.* 3 *pl.* trouble, 264 ; *p.p.* TENDE, 1916
TENTE, *s.* heed, 3586, 4094
TENTYLY, *adv.* needfully, 3618
TERMYS, *S. pl.* business, 3654
THARE, *v. impers.* 3 *s.* needs ; HYM THARE, he needs, 403
THEE, *s.* thigh, 1046 ; *pl.* 1100
THETHYN, *adv.* thence, 4345
THEWES, *s.pl.* customs, manners, 21
THIKKE, *S.* throng, 3755; *pl.* 2216
THIRLE, *V.* pierce, 1413; 3 *s.* 2167 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 1858, 3890 ; *p.p.* 2688
THOLE, *V.* suffer, allow, *676,* 4150
THOURGHEGIRDE, THURGHEGIRDE, *p.p.* smitten through, 1461, 3683
THRA, THRAA, THROO, *adv.* fierce, bold, 3295, 249; *supcrL* 3756
THRANGE, *S.* throng, 2217
THRA WE, *s.* throe, 1150
THREPIDE, THREPPIDE, *V.* 3 *s. and pl.* strove, 930, 2216
THRETTE, *V.* threaten, ill-treat, 3295 ; 3 *s.* THRETYS, 249
THRETTY, *num.* thirty, 3295
THRI8TIS, *v.* 3 *s. arndpl.* thrusts, 3755, 1151

THROLY, *adv.* vehemently, fiercely, 1150, 2217, 4332
THRYNGEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* presses, 1150, 2217
THURSSE, *S.* giant, 1100
THYNKES, THYNKKYS, *V. impers.* 3 *s.* seems, seems fit, 366, 350, 1989; *prct.* THOGHTE, THOUGHTS, 495, 3230
THYZANDEZ, *8. pl. Hee* TYDANPIS
TIDE, *S.* time, 3902 ; *pl.* 753
TIL, TILL, *prep,* to, 36, 130, 3608 ; *adv.* too, 959, 1200
TILTIN, *v.* 3 *pl.* topple over, 1144
TITE, TYTTE, *adv.* quickly, 2574, 737, 1891 ; ALLE TITE, at once, 3886
TITTEZ, *v.* 3 *s.* pulls, 1801
To-BRISTE, *v.* burst asunder, 3982
TOGEDIIIS, TOGEPYRE, *adv.* together, 1050, 1000, 2718
TOGERS, *s. pl.* (?) for TOGES (?), togas, mantles, 178
TOGES, *S. pl.* mantles, 3189
TOILE, *s.* tumult, 1802
TOLL, *S.* customs, taxes, 1568
TOLOWRIS, *s. pl.* (?) 3618
TOMORNE, *adv.* to-morrow, 1587
TONGES, *s. pl.* tongues, appendages to the dragon's tail, 821
TOPPE, *s.* tuft of hair on the top of the head, 801
TOPPE-CASTELLS, *s. pl.* upper deck-houses
TORATTYS, *v.* 3 *pl.* rend asunder, 2235
TORFERE, TOURFERE, *S.* difficulty, trouble, 1956, 3741, 2582
TORUUSCHEEZ, *V.* 3 *pl.* dash asunder, 2235
TO-STONAYEDE, *p.p.* taken aback, 1436
TOPER, *adj.* other, 234, 3283 (pat oper)
TOURSE, 5. pack, burden, 616
TOWCHE, *V.* touch; touch with intent to harm ; reach ; rehearse, 2067 ; 3 *s.* 800, 1570, 1591 ; *prct.* 3 *s.* 770, 841 ; *p.p.* 2570 ; *ppl.* 263
TOWN, *adj.* trained, 178
TOWRYTHES, *v.* 3 *s.* writhes, 3920
TOWYN, *v. pret.* 3 *pl.* drew, 3655
TOYLEZ, TOYELYS, *S. pl.* gear (more commonly snare, gin), 732, 3616
TRAISE, *V.* 3 *s.* draws, goes, 1629
TRAISTELY, *adv.* surely, securely, 3568, 1976
TRAPPEDE, *adj.* covered with trappings, 731, 1757
TRAUAILLEDE, *adj.* those who have known travail in fight, 1947; TRAYUELLED, toiled, 2357
TRAUAYLANDE, *ppl.* probably mis-written for TREVAYLANDE, trifling, 1684
TRAYLEDE, P.*p.* drawn, 250
TRAYNE, *S.* stratagem, wile, 1630, 3901
TRAYNE, *V.* lure, 1683
TRAYS, *S.* trace, way, 4055
TRAYSTE, *V.* trust, 669 ; 3 *s.* 1987, 2870 ; *pret.* 3 5. 1955, 3569
TREMBLANDE, *ppl.* trembling, 3899
TRETE, 5. (TRESTE), trestle, 3655
TRETE, TRETTE, *V.* treat, consider, negotiate, 991, 250, 878; *p.p.* 407, 3191
TREUNT, *V.* loiter, pause, 1976 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3900; *p.p.* played a trick, 2017
TREW, TREWE, *s.* truce, treaty, 263, 879, 2932

TREWAGE, *s.* tribute, 2358
TREWGHE, TREWTHE, *S.* truth, 3437, 3929
TRINE, *V.* go ; 3 *pl.* 1757, 3192 ; 3 *s.* 3592, TRYNNYS, 3901 ; *ppl.* 4189
TRISEN, *v.* 3 *pL* trice, haul up, 832
TRISTILY, TRISTLY, *adv.* trustily, faithfully, courageously, 407, 2357, 731, 832
TROFLE, TROFULL, *v.* trifle, use trickery, 2932, 1702 ; ' p*pl.* 1683
TROME, *V.* array troops, 3592
TROMPEDE, *adj.* having trumpets, 3713
TROMPES, TPOMPPEZ, TROVMPPES, TRUMPPEZ, *S. pl.* trumpets, 1757, 1484, 4107, 1702, 832
TROUFLYNGE, *S.* trifling, 114
TROUTHE, TEOWTHE, TEOWHE, *s.* troth, 164, 1063, 3875 ; *pl.* 2325
TROWMPYNGE, S trumpeting, 3191
TRUFLES, *S. pl.* nonsense, 89
TRUMPPEDE, *V. PRET.* 3 *pl.* trumpeted, 407
TRUSSE, TRUSSEN, *V.* truss, pack up, 3592, 1976; 3 *pl.* 731, 3655 ; *p.p.* 1702
TRVSSELL, *S.* packs, bundles, 3655
TRYEDE, r. *pret.* 3 *s.* arrayed, 1947
TUMBELLEZ, *V.* 3 *pl.* stagger, 1143
TWA, *num.* two, 171, 334
TYDANDIS, TYTHDANDS, THYZANDEZ, *s. pl.* tidings, 3450, 264, 1567
TYDE, r. betide, 879; 3 *s.* TYDDES, 3741 ; *p.p.* TYDDE, 3451, 3454
TYKES, *S. pl.* dogs, curs, 3642, 4258
TYMPYRDE, *pp.* made, 3742
TYMEDE, *p.p.* WELE TYMEDE, having fallen out well, 3151
TYNE, *V.* lose, 2933 ; 2 *s.* TYNNEZ, 1954 ; *p.p.* TYNT, 770, 3560, 3929 ; destroyed, 4281

PAR, PARE, *adj.* those, 58, 434
PAKERY, PAIRY, *adv.* also, besid<s, 190, 1186
PIR *pire ., pron.* and *adj.* these, 1161, 1164, 993
POGH, POF, POFFE, *conj.* though, 417, 109, 460, 2688
PURGHE, POURGHE, PORUGHE, POROWE, PROWGHE, PRUGHE, *prughte. prep* through, 1,499, 2253, 195, 24, 1772, 1413, 390

VAKSALLAGE, *s.* 2048
VAWEWAVARDE, .S. vanguard, 1981
YENCOUS. SEE YEKQUYSE
VENGE, V. avenge, 807 ; *p.p.* 298, 2264
VEKQUYSE, VEKCOUS, *r.* vanquish, 1984, 4297 ; p*ret.* 3 *s.* 2093 ; *p.p.* 325, 2065
VENTELDE, V. *pret.* 3 *pl.* spread sail to the wind
VERNACLE, *S.* the vornicle, copy of the handkerchief believed to bear the imprint of Christ's face, 297, 386
VERNAGE, *S.* a highly-prized white wine from Italy, 204, 3166
VERREDE, *p.p.* spotted, 2573
VERTELY, *adv.* readily, 3166
VESARE, VESERE, *S.* visor, 910, 2572
VESETTEZ, *V.* 3 *s.* invests, puts in possession, 1726
VETAILE, *V.* victual, 353 ; 3 *s.* 3165

VIAGE, *s.* journey, expedition, 2037, 2493
VICE, *S.* defect, or screw, WITHOWTTYN VICE, not closed (?), 911
VISEZ, *v.* 3 *s.* purposes, 3167
VMBECLAPrES, *v.* 3 *s.* embraces, 1779
VMBELAPFES, *V.* 3 *s.* surrounds, 1819 ; *pret.* 3 *pl.* 3785
VMBRERE, *S.* defence for the face attached to the helmet, 943, 3952
VNABAISTE, *adj.* unabashed, 1378
VNBLYSSIDE, *adj.* shut out from benediction, 962
VNCLEDE, *p.p.* unclothed, 789
VNCOUTHE, VNCOWTHE, *adj.* unknown, strange, 1902, 3514
VNDIKTAKANDE, *ppl.* enterprising, 2723
VNDRON, VNDROUN, *S.* underii, morning hours from nine to twelve, 2840, 3077, 462
VNFAIRE, *adv.* badly, foully, unpleasantly, 303, 1074, 2171
VNFAYRE, *adj.* unhurt, living, 2796
VNFEKS, *adj.* tamed, quelled, 4122
VNFRALSTEDE, *adj.* unproven, 2861, 2736
VNFRELY, *adv.* ignobly, clownishly, 780
VNMETE, *adj.* unmeet, ill-proportioned, 4070
VNQUELLYDE, *adj.* unslain, 3810
VNREKKN, *adj.* helpless, aimless, 3754
VNRYGHTTWYSLYE, *adv.* against right, 329
VNSAUGHTE, VNSAWGHTE, *adj.* unreconciled, at strife, 1306, 1457
VNSAUGHTELY, *adv.* unfriendly, 1501
VNSEKYRLY, *adv.* unsafely, 966
VNSLELY, *adv.* clumsily, churlishly, 979
VNsrARELY, *adv.* abundantly, 235, 3160
VNTREWELY, *adv.* dishonestly, 886
VNUENQI'¶STE, *adj.* unvanquished, 2049
VNWEMMYOE, *adj.* spotless, 3801
VNWITTYLY, *adv.* unwisely, 3802
VNWYNLY, *adv.* unjoyfully, unpleasantly, 955, 1302, 1481
VoiDE, *v.* avoid, pass away ; quit, cause to quit, 309, 215, 2049 ; 3 *s.* 3764, 1974 ; 3 *pl.* 3168 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 2094
VOUTE, VOUT, *s.* mien, 137, 3054
VOYDE. *adj.* empty, 10; free from'(?), 911
VPCYNES (?), 3675
VRAYLLEDE, *adj.* (?) 2568
VTAS, *S.* octave of a festival, 625
VTTERE, *adv.* out, away, 2438
VTTERS, *V.* 3 *s.* brings forth, 418
VTTIRLY, *adv.* outside, 31
VYS, VYSE, *S.* screw, specially that used to work the crossbow, 3617, 2424

WACHE, WACCHEN, *V.* guard, 547, 613 ; *p.p.* 1613
WACHE, *S.* guard, sentinels, 2499 ; *pi,* 1356
WAFULL, *adj.* woeful, 950, 955
WAGANDE, *ppl,* stirring, 3660
WAGE, WAGGE, *v.* hire, engage, stake ; 333, 547, 2969, 2445
WALDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s. pl.* would, 339, 342, 973
WALE, *S.* plank along the edge of a ship, 740
WALE, *S.* choice, 181

WALE, *adj.* choice, 2118
"WALE, WALLE, *S.* ocean, 741, 763, 493
WALKYN, *S.* welkin, sky, 787
"WALOPANDE, *ppl.* galloping, 2147, 2827
WALOWES, *V.* 3 *pt.* wallow, roll, 1142 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* WALE WEDE, 3838
WALSCHE, *adj.* Welsh, 320, 2044
WANDIIETHE, WAXEDRETHE, &. woe, sorrow, 323, 2370; *pl.* WONRYDEZ, 707
WANDSOMLY, *adv.* toilfully,4012
WANE, *adj.* pale, 492
WARANTISEZ, S. *pl.* guarantees, 1614
WARDEDE, *p.p.* guarded, 1614
WARPROP, WARDROPE, *S.* wardrobe, room in which wearing apparel, armour, etc. was kept and repaired, 4203, 901, 2622
WARE, *adv.* where, 1054
WARE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* were, 18, 177 ; 2 *s.* 964 ; 3 *s.* 73 ; *prct.* 1 *s.* WARRE, 2647
WARE, WARRE, *adj.* wary, prudent, aware, 19, 1973, 2045
WARELY, *adv.* warily, cautiously, 4026
WARESCHE, *V.* be healed, recover, 2186
WARLAWE, WARLOW, WERLAUGHE, *S.* warlock, traitor, one in league with the devil, 948, 1140, 3771 ; *pl.* 613
WARNES, *V.* 3 *a.* denies, 700
WARPE, WERPE, *V.* throw, turn, 150, 9 ; *imperat.* 2 *pl.* 2746 ; *prct.* 3 *s.* WARP, 901
WASTERNNE, *S.* wilderness, 3233
WATE, *V. tiec* WIET
WATHE, *S.* peril, 2668
WATHES, 5. *pl.* game, 3233
WATHELY, *adv.* dangerously, 2090, 2186
WATYRE-MEN, *S. PL.* mariners, 741
WAWARDE, 5. vanguard, 1767
WAWHTE, AWAWHTE (?), risky, (?) 3480
WAVE A RE, *s.* course, 1797
WAYFIC, *V.* stray, 960
WAYTE, WAYTTEN *V.* heed, serve, watch, 164, 1807 ; 3 *s.* 2979
WECHES, *S. Pl-* sorcerers, 613
WEDPE, *p.p.* wedded, 700
WEDES, WEDYS, *S. pl.* weeds, garments, 168, 2499
WEIFK. SEE WIF
WEKYRLY, *adr.* nimbly, 2104
WELDE, WEILDE, *V.* rule, possess, 3090, 650, 2967
WELE, *s.* weal, wealth, 401, 674, 3963
WELK, WEILE, *adr.* well, 869, 1788
WELLE, V. spring forth, bubble up, ilow ; 3s. 3819 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* 3377
WELLYDE, P.P. boiled, 1736
WELTE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* overturned, 3152
WEKES, *r.* 3 *s.* (?) vires (?), turns round (?), 3054
WERKES, *S. pl.* works, 3, 19
WERKKES, *p.* 3 *s,* aches, 2689 ; *Ppl.* 1797, 2148
WERLDE, *a.* world, 5, 533
WERPE, *v. See* WARPE
WERRAYE, WERIIEYE, *V.* wage war upon, harry, 546, 657 ; 3 *pl.* 3447 ; *prct.* 3 s. 2045 ; *ppl.* 2089, 2599
WERRYDE, *V. pret.* 3 *s.* wore, 3872 ; *p.p.* WEREDE, 2930
WERY, WERYE, *V.* curse, 699, 4286 ; 3 *s.* 3888 ; *pp.* 959
WERYEDE, *p.p.* wearied, 796
WESCHE, *V. pret.* 3 *pl.* washed, 231 ; *p.p.* 1301

WETEN, WETTE. *See* WIET
WEYFFE, *S.* *See* WIF
WEYN, *S.* wine, 161
WEYNDEZ, *V.* 2 5. wendest, goest; 3 *s.* 2185
WHAM, WHAYM, *pron.* whom, 1202, 770
WHANNE, *pret.* 3 *pl.* won, 22
WHETHIRE, *pron.* which (of two), 350
WHILKE, *pron.* which, 4194
WHILLES, WHILLS, WHYLEZ, *conj.* whilst, until, 1335, 1197, 3908
WHILOM, *adv.* sometimes, 1145
WIELDE, *s* (?) power (?), perhaps a name for a muscle, 2689
WIESE, WEYSSE, WYES, W YESSE. *adj.* wise, 3035, 2514, 149^ 2745 ; *superl.* 290, WHYESESTE, 532
WIET, WETTE, WIT, *V.* know, know of, understand, 420, 945, 708 ; 1 *s.* WATE, WATTE, 4203, 533 ; 2 *s.* 3393, 3549 ; 2 *pl.* WOTTE, 4100 ; *pret.* 1 *s.* WISTE, 3231 ; 3 *s.* 4204, WYSTE, 891 ; *p.p.* WETEN, WYTEN, 2966, 869
WIF, WEIFE, WEYFFE, WIEFFE, WYEFE, WYF, WYFFE, *S.* woman, wife, 993, 652, 674, 3575, 955, 3082 ; *pl.* 294
WIGHTENEZ, WYGHTNESSE, *S.* bravery, vigour, strength, 1806, 258, 224
WILL, *S.* rage, 3836
WILLED, *p.p.* astray, 3230
WILNEZ, WILLNEZ, *v.* 2 *s.* desirest, 2224, 3479, 961 ; 3 *s.* 384
WIRCHIPE, 5. honour, 2187, 10, 150 ; *pl.* 22
WIRCHIPE, *v.* honour, hold dear; 3 s. 397 ; WYUSCHETPEZ, 1059 ; *p.p.* 320
WHICHIPFULL, *adj.* honourable, 1356, 650
WIRKE, WHICHE, *v.* work, perform, act, 339, 149, 130 ; 2 *s.* 2432 ; 3 *s.* 1267 ; WYRKKES, 1468 ; 3 *pl.* 663 ; *pret.* 3 *s.* WROGHTE, 1796; 3 *pl.* WROGHTEN, 2137 ; *p.p.* 2622
WISTE. *See* WELTE
WITH, *prep,* by, 999
WITHTHY, *conj.* provided, 2587, 2591
WITT, WITTE, *S.* wisdom, intelligence, sense, 3963, 2745, 741, 149 ; *pl.* 2392
WITTERLY, WYTTERLYE, *adv.* certainly, truly, 3549, 324
WLONKE, *adj.* fair, fine, 3154, used substantively, 3338
WODE, *adj.* mad, 3837
WODELY, *adv.* madly, 2827
WODEWLSE, *adv.* madly, 3817
WOKES, *s. pl.* weeks, 354
WOLF-HEUEDE, *s.* wolfs head, 1093
WOMBE, *s.* belly, 768
WONDE, WOONDE, *v.* fear, hesitate, 3494, 1615 ; 3 *s.* 3833
WOXDES, *S. pl.* wounds, 1469, 2148
WONDERLICHE, WONDYRLYCHE, *adv.* wonderfully, 1357
WONDSOM, *s.* trouble, 3836
WONE, *s.* dwelling, abode, 1300, 2472, 4204
WONN, *v.* dwell, 3910 ; 3 *s.* 3551
WONNYNGES, *s. pl.* dwellings, 3157
WONRYDEZ, *s. pl.* distress, 707. *See* WANDRETHE
WORPE, *v. imperat.* 2 5. pronounce, 3393
WORME, *s.* reptile, 796, 798
WOROWS, *v.* 3 *s.* destroys, 958
WORTHE, *v.* be, become, 959,3553
WORTHELICHE, WORTHILYCHE, WORTHILY, *adj.* worthy, honourable, 695, 2669

WOTTE, *V. See* WlET
WRAITE, *v. pret.* 3 *s.* wrote, 3904
WRAKFULL, *adj.* revengeful, 3818
WRANGE, *adj.* left, 1480
WRAYTHE, *v. prct.* 3 *s.* writhed, 1093
WREKE, WREKEN, *V.* avenge, 321, 151 ; 3 *s.* 2213 ; *p.p.* WROKEN, 2225, 2968
WRETHE, *S.* wrath, 321, 1737
WRETHE, S. gold, 1093
WRETHIDE, *v. pret.* 3 *s.* angered, 2191
WRICHE, *s.* wretch, 1004, 2778
WRISTEL, WRYSTILL, *V.* wrestle, 3.s. and pl. 1141, 890
WROTHELY, *adv.* fiercely, angrily, 1141, 2214
"WROTHERAYLE, *s.* calamity, distress, 3154
WRYHIE, *v.* flourish, · 1322
WY, WYE, 5. man, person, 164, 2669 ; *pl.* WYES, WYESE, 56, 1300
WYE, *V.* weigh (anchor), 740
WYGHTE, *S.* wight, man, 959
WYOIITE, *adj.* vigorous, swift, strong, 1140 ; *comp.* 964 ; *supcrl.* 290, 532
WYGHTLY, *ado.* swiftly, vigorously, 553, 740
WYXCHE, V. 3 *pl.* start back, 2104
WYNDOWES, *a. pl.* parts of the aventailc, 911
WYNLYCHE, *adj.* delightful, 181
WYSSH, *V. imperat.* 3 *s.* direct, teach, 9, 813 ; 3 *s.* 671
WYTILSYTTE, r. resist, 104

YCHE. *Sec* ILKE
YSCHKWES, *v.* 3 s. issues, 610
YTHEZ, *S. pl.* waves, 741, 763

INDEX OF NAMES.

(The interpretations are given in the Notes.)

Absolon 2868
Achinour, 1824
Acres, 903
Affrike, 574; Affryke, 1869; Aufrike, 2607 ; Awfrike, 3933
Akyn, 496
Aladuke, 1739 ; Alidoyke of Towelie, 1916 ; Alyduke, 1824
Alexander, 2634 ; Alexandere, 3408, 4610 ; Alexandre, 2602
Alexandere, 2607 ; Alysaundyre, 572
Algere, 2837, 2847
Alidoyke. *See* Aladuke
Almaygue, 3596 ; Almaync, 45, 496, 555, 618, 2387, 3210
Alyduke. *Sec* Aladuke
Alymere, 4078
Alysaundyre. *See* Alexandere
Amazonnes, 584
Ambyganye, 572
Antele, 2829, 2837
Anyon, 42
Araby, 1175
Arraby, 576
Argayle, 4123
Arthur, 26, 496 ; Arthure, 172, 288, 305, 470, etc.
Askanere, 1739
Asye, 574
Aueloyne, He of, 4309
Aufrike. *See* Affrike
Aungers, 288
Awguste, 1967
Babyloyn, 586
Baldake, 586
Bareflete, 629, 1182, 1223 ; Barflete, 835
Barouns, 1908
Baaill, 907
Bawdewyne, 277 ; Bawdwyne, 1606, 2384
Bayon(e), 38, 2379
Bayous, 587
Bedvore, 893, 1170; Bedwar, 2384; Bedwere, 1162, 1264, 1606, 1744, 2238, 2379
Bedwyn, 1408
Belyn, 277
Berade, 2384
Berell, 1605, 1775, 1914 ; Berille, 1264, 1771 ; Berylle, 1433
Bernardo, Mounte, 566
Boice, 1263, 1426, 1433, 1456; Boyce, 1483, 1485, 1605 ; Boys, 1378
Borghte, 1698
Boyce, Boys. *See* Boice
Brabane, 36
Bremyn, 277
Bretayn(e), 2095, 2330, 2362, etc. ; Bretaynne, 3519 ; Bretayn the brade, 106 ; B. the brode, 3579 4346 ; B. the braddere, 55, 1699 ; B. the more, 1018
Bretayne, 852 ; B. the lease, 36 ; B. the lyttylie, 304

Bretons, 1011,1484, 1617, 4111; Bretons, 1403, 1407 ; Bretouns, 1348 ; Bretowns, 4104; Bretowne, *sg.* 3508
Brut, 1695
Bruytte, the, 4346
Bryane, 1606
Burdeux, 38
Burgoyne, 36, 1018, 1241, 2383

Cador, 247, 1718, 1724, 1777, etc. ; Cadore, 481, 1602, 1637, 1707 ; Cadors, 4188 ; Cadour, 259
Caerlyon, 61 ; Karelyone, 3916 ; Karlyon, 3512
Calaburn, 4230 ; Calibume, 4193; Calyburn, 4242
Came, 2380, 2385
Capados, 580
Cardyfe, 2498
Carelele, 480, 839 ; Carlelele, 64, 476
Castell Blanke, 1225
Catlike, 482
Cayme, 1311
Cayous, 156, 209, 892, 1864, 1997 ; Kay oils, 1152, 1194, 2157, etc.
Chartris, 1619
Chastelayne,2952; Chasteleynne, 3028
Cheldrike, 2951
Chestyre, 3914
Childrike, 3537
Christofre, 2390
Clarent, 4202 ; Clarente, 4193
Clarybalde, 2497
Clarymownde, 2497. *See* Clere-monde
Clegis, 1604, 1638, 1649, 1671, etc.; Clegys, 1692, 3635
Clemente, 1828
Cleremonde, 1603, 4265 ; Cleremownde, 3635; Cleremownnde, 1638
Cleremus, 1603, 1638
Clowdmur, 1604
Clyme, the close of, 1639
Collbrande, 2123, 2201
Coloine, 623
Combe, 3110, 3128, 3149
Constantyn(e), 282, 4316
Constantyne, 628, 848 ; Costantyne, 2373 ; Constantyne landez, 1187
Cordewa, 1866
Cornett, 600 ; Cornette, 1909
Cornewaile, 1848, 2002, 2262, 3897 ; Cornowale, 1791 ; Cornewaile, 1637 ; Cornewayle, 247, 1777 ; Kornewaylle, 4054
Craddoke, 3511, 3517 ; Cradoke, 3487
Crasyn, cowntas of, 3045
Creette, 200 ; Crete, 204, 580
Crist, 136, 467, 482, etc. ; Criste, 227, 285, 296, etc. ; Cryste, 257, 308, 346, etc.
Cyprys, 596

Damaske, 578
Damyat, 578
Danamarke, 3936; Danemarke, 3752, 3783 ; Danmarke, 46
Danamarkes, 3610 ; Danmarkes, 3528
Danes, 3694
Danuby, 622
Dauid, 3416
Dolfinede, 2653
Dolfyne, 3023 ; Dolphyne, 2970
Dorsett, 4052
Dotiere, 3066
Duche-men, 1251 ; Duche-mene, 2030, 2101, 2653, 2834

Ector, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343
Egipt, 576, 2200
Elamet, 575
Ermonye, 573
Ermyngall, 1825

Errake, 4075, 4161, 4263
Eruge, 42
Eaexe, 1740
Estriche, 45, 3933
Ewandre, 1868 ; Ewandyre, 1622 ; Ewaynedyre, 1904
Ewayn(e), 357, 1572, 3973, 4075, etc.; Ewayn, fytz Henry, 1558 ; Ewane fytz Vryenee, 337 ; Ewayne fytz Vriene, 2066
Ewfrates, 573
Ewrope, 571

Famacoste, 2761
Fawnell, 2765
Feclerike, 2899
Feltemour, 1382
Feraunt, 2760, 2765 ; Ferawnt, 3404 ; Ferawnte, 2121
Ferrer, 2421 ; Ferrere, 2432
IF. Names beginning with ff "are entered under single *F*.
Flaundres, 495 ; Flaundrez, 34. 494 ; Flawudresche, 3597
Florent, 2232, 2735, 2762, 2764, 2797, etc,; Florente, 2183, 2729
Floridas, 2755, 2778,2780, 2803, 3018, 3112; Florydas, 2490
Forawnt, 2490
France, 2365 ; Frauuce, 34, 110, 367, 435, etc.
Fraunche-inene, 2184
Fres, 3864
Freselaund, 110 ; Friselande, 367 ; Fryselande, 2765
Froderike, 3864
Froill, 3404 ; Froll(e), 3315, 4208

Galelć, 592
Galuth, 1387, 1470, 3709 ; Galuthe, 2558
Galyran, 3636
Galys londe, 3862
Garyere, 592
Gawayne, 1265, 1352, 1368. 2218, etc.; Gawaymie, 2979, 3860 ; Gaweayne, 1468 ; Gaywayne, 233 ; Wawayn(e), 964, 1302, 1342, 1744, 2953
Gaynour, 84, 705 ; Waynor, 3904, 4204, 4325 ; "Waynore, 3550, 3575 ; Waynour, 233, 652, 657, 697
Gayous, 1346, 1385
Geen, 559, 843, 863 ; Genne, 2S97 ; lone, 2889, 2909
Genyvers, 375
Gerarde, 2896
Gernaide, 2943
Gernesay, 3861
Geron, 863
Geryn, 3708
Glamorgan, 59
Glamour, 3862
Glasehenbery, 4303, 4329 ; Glasschenberye, 4308
Godarde, 562, 2655 ; Goddarde, 3104 ; Mount Goddarde, 497
Godfraye, 3430
Golapas, 2124
Golyas, 3419
Gothelande, 37 ; Gutlaiide, 3763
Gowere, 3861
Grece, 37, 1000 ; Greke, 1463
Grekos, 602
Grekkes See, 594
Grisswolde, 3708
Gryine, 1265
Gutlande. *Sec* Gothelande
Gyan, 37

Hamptone, 3031
Hardelfe, 1741 ; Hardolfe, 2974 3583
Hawyke, 3541
Henawde, 35
Henguste, 3545
Herygall, 1742
Heryll, 1742
Hillary, 625
llolaund, 35

Mors, 3545
Howell, 1180, 1741, 3583
Humbyre, 3541

Iaffe, Porte, 1520, 1544, 2039
Idirous, 4078; Idrous, 4135, 4141 ; Idrus, 1439, 1510 ; Idrus fitz Ewayn, 1490, 1498
Iene, 2889, 2909
Ienitall, 2112
Ierante, 2S90
Ierusalem, 3415, 3433
Iewe, 2895
Ihesu, 863
Inde, 573
Inglande, 1412, 2359, 3500, 3685; Ynglande, 283, 710, 724
Ioatall, 2877
Iolyan, 2889
Ioneke, 1739, 1868, 1905
Iosephate, vale of, 2876
Iosue, 2605, 3414
Irelande, 31, 2359, 3534, 3909
Irritayne, 575
Iudas, 2605, 3412
Iulius Cesar, 115 ; Iutyus Cesare, 8410
Iulyus, 2877

Karelyone, Karlyon. *Sec* Caerlyon
Karolus, 3423
Kayon, 2380
Kentt, 3542

Lancelott, 1720; Launeelot, 2073; Launcelott, 368 ; Launcelotte, 1999; Lawncelot de Lake, 3638 ; Lawneelott, 4266
Lebe, 1767, 1781, 1803, 1817, 1827, 1900
Leo, 1971
Lettow, 605; Lettowe, 2167, 3784
Lewlyn, 1826
London, 2418
Lorayne, 350, 2398, etc.; Lorrayne, 429, 2418, 2531, etc.
Loth, 2081, 3637 ; Lothe, 4266; Lott, 1999
Lottez, 382
Lowell, 1516
Lowes, 4266
Lucerne, 3094
Lucius, 128, 251, 383, etc. ; Lucyus, 23 ; Lucius Iberius, 86
Lumbarddye, 3108, 3594; Lumbardye, 2406, 2654, 2997, 3585; Lumberddye, 498; Lumberdye, 135, 350, 429, 1972
Lusscheburghe, 2388
Lyonell, 1516, 2227, 3637, 4266

Macodone, 603
Makabee, 3413
Marie, 2869, 3998, 4041
Marrake, 4220, 4267 ; Marrike, 4209 ; Merrake, 4077
Marschalle de Mowne, 1397
Mawrell of Mauncez, 1918
Mawren, 1918
Mees, 2950 ; Meyes, 2417
Melan(e), 3134, 3144 ; Meloyne, 351, 428
Merieduke, 4077, 4267 ; M. of Mentoche, 1919
Merrake. *See* Marrake
Messie, 3998
Meyes. *See* Mees
Mighell, Saynt, 940 ; Seynt M., 1069 ; Myghell, 1166
Mighell Mount, Seynt, 899
Modrede, 679, 3555, 3569, 3766, 3772, 3840; Mordrede, 645, 711, 3874, 4221, 4226, etc.; Mordede the Malebranche, 4062, 4174
Mownttagus, 3773

Nauerne, 44

Nazarethe, 591
Normandye, 834 ; Normaundye, 44
Norwaye, 44, 3935
Nylus, 591

Orcage, 572
Orgaile, 3534, 3934 ; Orgayle, 30
Origge, 1825
Orkenay, 30 ; Omkenay, 3934 ; Orkkenaye, 4163
Owghtreth, 234

Pamphile, 588
Paradice, 2706 ; Paradyse, 2039
i'aresche, 1340, 1888, 2647 ; Parys, 1609, 1631
Paule, 2413
Pavy,3141 ; Pavye, 568
Pawnee, 3140
Peghttes, 4125 ; Pevghtes, 3533
Perce, 588, 1520 ; "Perse, 1377, 1544
Peter, 2413, 2724, 2883 ; Retire, 2646 ; Petyr, 1256, 1476,1519, 1631 ; Petir, 1610 ; Petire, 1543 ; Petyr, 1419
Petyrsande, 352
Peyglites. *See* Peghttes
Peyters, 40
Porte Iafte. *See* Iaffe.
Portyngale, 1028
Pounte Tremble, 327, 352 ; Pownte T., 3140
Preter Iohne, 588
Prewsslande, 2788 ; Prusylande, 604, 2835
Priamous, 2698, 2724, 2811, 2836, 2916 ; Priaraus, 2595, 2646, 2690
Prouynce, 40 ; Provynee, 2647
Pruyslande. *See* Prewsslande
Pryamous, 4344
Pull, 604
Pys, 352; Pyse, 3141

Rawlaunde, 1607 ; Rowlande, 1745
Raynalde, 1607, 1995; Raynallde, 1745
Raynalde of the Rodes, 2785
Reone. *Sec* Rone
Keynes, 853
Richeere, 1745; Richere, 1607, 1995, 2790
Romayne, 310, 1704, 1733, *pl.;* Romaynes, 120, 174, 221, etc.; Romaynez, 1761, 1877, etc. ; Romayns, 1291, 1361, etc.
Rome, 23, 80, 86, 93, etc.
Rone, 1338 ; Reone *(i* Roone), 424
Roodcs, 597
Rowlande, 1745
Rown, 1996

Salarne, 2586 ; Salerne, 4311
Sandewyehe, 447 ; Sandwyche, 490, 635, 720
Sarazene. 2277 ; pl. Sarazenes, 624, 1846, 1911, etc.; Sarazenez, 1960 ; Sarezenes, 599, 607 ; Sarzanez, 1854 ; Sarzynes, 1626
Satanase, 3812
Sayne, 1336
Scottlande, 32, 292
Segramoure, 1871
Sessoyn(e), 1977, 2657, 2907 ; Sexon,1964
Sessoynes, 3530
Sexon. *See* Sessoyne
Sextcnour, 1700 ; Sextynour of Lyby, 1625
Soone, 2482
Sotere. *See* Sutere
Southampton, 3546
Spanyolis, 3700
Spayne, 999, 3162
Spolett, 3161
Spruyslande, 3162
Surgenale, 3532

Surry, 608, 1687, 1844, etc.; Surrye, 590, 1626, 3312 ; Surylande, 2657
Sutere, 1627, 1910 ; Sotere, 1871
Suters, 501
Swaldye, 57
Swetherwyke, 47
Swyan of Swecy, 2958
Swynn, 47

Tambire, 3902
Tartary, 582
Thebay, 583
Tholus, 39 ; Tolouse, 1567
Towell, 1916
Treyntis(?), 4056
Troye, 887, 1696, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343
Troys, 1629
Turkayn, 2408
Turky, 582
Turkys, 1917
Turoyn, 39
Turry, 234
Tuschayne, 431; Tuskane, 3150 ; Tuskayne, 328, 499, 3586, 3593

Valence, 41
Valewnce, Viscownte of, 2047
Valyant, 2064 ; V. of Vylcris, 1982
Venyce, 204 ; Yenyse, 2025
Vertennon vale, 3169
Yiterbe, 326, 353, 2025, 2048, 3164
Ynwyn, 2868
Vryell, 1744
Yryenee. *See* Ewayne
Yter, 29 ; Vtere, 521, 1310, 4216
Ytere, 1904
Vtolfe, 1622, 1868
Vyenne, 41

Wade, 964
Walchere, 2680
Wales, 33, 56; Walis, 2890 ; West AValys, 322
Walschelande, 334
Waltyre, 2495
Walyngfordhe, 4203, 4217
Watlyng-strette, 450
Wawayne. *See* Gawayjie
Way nor, Waynore, Waynour. *See* Gaynour
Wecharde, 2495
Westfâle, 2826 ; Westuale, 2656; Westwale, 621
Whycher, 2678 ; Wychere, 2680, 4025
Wyghte, 334
Wynchestre, 4011

zorke, 636, 3911

Richard Clay & Sons, Limited, London & Bungay.